

JAAMACADDA GÖTEBORG  
KULLIYADDA AFAFKA IYO SUUGAANTA  
P.O.B. 200 • 405 30 GÖTEBORG • ISWIIDHAN

University of Gothenburg offers  
[net-based distance courses](#) in **Somali grammar & linguistics**  
for mother tongue speakers of Somali.  
Courses are free of charge for Norwegian and EU citizens.

# WEERA YNTA

## AFKA SOOMAALIGA

Morgan Nilsson

03.05.2025

# Contents

Contents.....	1
Unit 1      What is Syntax?.....	6
1. Key concepts .....	6
1.1 Hierarchy.....	9
1.2 Grammatical Relations .....	10
1.3 Agreement.....	11
1.4 Word order.....	12
1.5 Ambiguity .....	13
1.6 Well-formedness .....	13
1. Terminology.....	13
1. Additional reading.....	13
1. Old Exercises.....	14
Notes 2022 .....	14
Unit 2      Phrases & Phrase Order (< 6) .....	24
2.1 Hierarchies & Nodes .....	24
2.2 Phrase structure rules.....	25
Unit 3      The Functions of Pronouns (< 6).....	29
3.1 Gender & Number .....	29
3.2 Pronouns .....	30
3.3 Proximity .....	31
3.4 Reflexive pronouns .....	31
3.5 Emphatic pronouns .....	31
3.6 Agreement of Pronouns .....	32
3.7 The gap in Somali object pronoun inventory.....	32
3. Terminology.....	33
3. Additional reading.....	33
3. Old Exercises.....	33
Notes 2022 .....	35

Unit 4	The Subject–Predicate Relation Case & Agreement (< 5).....	44
4.1	Grammatical relations between subject NP and predicate VP.....	44
4.2	The Subject–Predicate Relation.....	45
4.2.1	Focus and Case .....	46
4.2.2	Focus and reduced verb forms.....	47
	Discussion: Reduced verb form in the plural .....	47
4.3	Subject–Predicate Agreement.....	48
	Discussion: Singular/plural variation in predicate .....	49
	Discussion: Masculine/feminine variation .....	50
4.3.1	Important Terminology.....	51
4.3.2	Numerals and measures as head of subject NP .....	52
4.3.3	<i>Maxay</i> and <i>wax</i> as subject NP .....	53
4.3.4	Focused postverbal subject .....	53
4.4	Other types of agreement .....	53
4.4.1	Subject pronouns.....	53
4.4.2	Possessives → new 5.2 (old 4.2) .....	54
4.4.3	Adjectives .....	54
	Add:.....	55
4.	Terminology.....	55
4.	Additional reading.....	55
4.	Old Exercises.....	56
	Notes 2022 .....	57
	Questions.....	62
Unit 5	The Internal Structure of Noun Phrases (< 4) .....	65
5.1	Subordination: Heads and dependents .....	65
5.2	Determiners .....	67
5.3	Noun Modifiers .....	67
5.4	Noun complements.....	71
5.5	Coordination.....	73
5.6	Apposition.....	77
	Add:.....	77

5. Terminology.....	78
5. Additional reading.....	78
5. Old Exercises.....	78
Notes 2022 .....	79
<b>Unit 6      The Internal Structure of Verb Phrases (&lt; 7).....</b>	<b>95</b>
6.1 The verb phrase (VP) .....	95
6.3 Clitics .....	95
6. Terminology.....	96
6. Additional reading.....	96
6. Old Exercises.....	96
Notes 2022 .....	98
<b>10 Clitics .....</b>	<b>104</b>
<b>Unit 7      Semantic Roles &amp; Grammatical Relations (&lt; 2) .....</b>	<b>106</b>
7.1 Arguments / Mowduucyo .....	106
7.2 Semantic Roles .....	107
7.3 Grammatical Form and Grammatical Relations .....	111
7.4 Subject marking in Somali .....	115
7.5 The semantic roles of the grammatical subject .....	116
7. Terminology.....	117
7. Additional reading.....	117
7. New Homework.....	117
7. Old Exercises.....	118
Notes 2022 .....	118
<b>Unit 8      Lexical Entries &amp; Argument Structure (&lt; 3).....</b>	<b>136</b>
8.1 Lexical Entries.....	136
8.2 Arguments and Adjuncts.....	136
8.3 Arguments with prepositions .....	138
8.4 Valence and Transitivity .....	139
8.5 Valence Alternations .....	142
8. Terminology.....	148
8. Additional reading.....	149

8. Old Exercises.....	149
Notes 2022 .....	149
8. New Exercises.....	151
Suggested solutions 2025 .....	152
Unit 9     Valency-changing operations (< 13).....	155
9.1 Valency changes.....	155
9.1 The Passive.....	155
9.2 Anticausatives .....	156
9.3 Causative verbs .....	158
9.4 Reflexive verbs and constructions.....	159
9.5 Reciprocal events .....	160
9.6 Autobenefactive events .....	161
9. Terminology.....	161
9. Additional reading.....	162
9. Old Exercises.....	162
Notes 2022 .....	165
Unit 10    Tense, Aspect and Mood (< 8).....	172
10.1 Tense .....	172
10.2 Aspect .....	173
10.3 Mood and Modality .....	179
10. Terminology.....	180
10. Additional reading.....	180
10. New Exercises.....	181
Notes 2022 (< 8) .....	182
Unit 11    Non-verbal semantic predicates (< 9) .....	190
11.1 The semantic predicate.....	190
11.1.1 Equative clauses .....	191
11.1.2 Attributive clauses .....	192
11.1.3 Other verbs in equative and attributive clauses.....	193
11.1.4 Locative clauses.....	193
11.1.5 Possessive clauses .....	194

11.1.6 Existential clauses .....	194
11.2 Predicate adjuncts .....	194
11.3 Impersonal clauses.....	117
11.4 Indefinite agent clauses.....	117
11. Terminology.....	195
11. Additional reading.....	195
11. Old Exercises.....	195
References .....	198
More will follow.....	227

# Unit 1

## What is Syntax?

### 1. Key concepts

"Weeraynta waxaa lagu bartaa dhismaha iyo qaababka kala duwan oo ay yeelan karto weerta guud ahaan, gaar ahaanna barashada Oraahyada sida oraah magaceedka iyo oraah faleedka. OM iyo OF waxa ay yihiin curiyayaasha weerta: hab qorista weerta W = OM + OF" (Waasuge 1990: 3)

**Syntax** is the branch of linguistics that investigates how words (and sometimes morphemes) are combined into larger units:

morphemes	morfem	morfiimyo
words	ord	erayo
phrases	fraser	oraahyo
clauses	satser	weero
sentences	meningar	jumlado (hawraaro)
paragraphs	stycken	faqrado / baaragaraafyo
texts	texter	qoraallo

Every linguistics expression has

a semantic	MEANING	BETYDELSE	MACNE
a grammatical	FORM	FORM	QAAB
a grammatical	FUNCTION	FUNKTION	DOOR ?? KAALIN

In order to be able to discuss syntax we need to define the different kinds of **words**, **phrases**, **clauses** and **sentences** that can be found in the language under investigation. They are not necessarily the same in all languages. Languages differ, and our description has to be based on our observation of the language we are studying.

For each type of word, phrase, clause and sentence we also need to describe both their **form**, **function** and **meaning**.

We need to divide the words into **word classes** (also called parts of speech, syntactic word-level categories, or lexical categories), e.g. verbs, nouns, adjectives...

<b>Word classes</b> <i>(Parts of speech)</i>	<b>Ordklasser</b>	<b>Jaadadka erayada</b> <i>(Qaybaha hadalka)</i>
Verb		Fal
Noun		Magac ( <i>Jiraale</i> )
Pronoun		Magacuyaal
Adjective		Sifo ( <i>Tilmaame</i> )
Particle		Qurub
Preposition		Horyaale ( <i>Meeleeye</i> )
Conjunction		Xiriiriye / Xidhiidhiye
Interjection		Yaab

We also need to divide phrases into different categories

Based on their form:

<b>Phrasal categories</b>	<b>Frastyper</b>	<b>Jaadadka oraahyada</b>
Noun phrase (NP),		OM, oraah-magaceed
Verb phrase (VP),		OF, oraah-faleed
Particle phrase (PP),		OQ, oraah-qurubeed
Adjective phrase (AdjP),		OS, oraah-sifeed

Based on their function:

<b>Sentence Constituents</b>	<b>Satsdelar</b>	<b>Xubnaha Weerta</b>
		(Konstituenter Qaybaha Weerta)
1. Predicate		Khabar
2. Subject		Yeele
3. Oblique		Mayeele (?)
3.1 Object		Layeele
3.2 Adverbial		Falkaab

Based on their meaning:

E.g.

Sahri luuggii waxay siisay riilkii.

agent theme	beneficent	(macne)
subjekt oblik	oblik	(funktion)

agent  
(direct object) / theme  
(indirect object) / beneficiary  
time adverbial  
place adverbial  
manner adverbial

We further divide clauses into different types

Based on their form:

declarative  
interrogative  
imperative  
prohibitive  
optative  
affirmative  
negative

Based on their function:

1. main clause
2. subordinate clause
  - 2.1 introduced by a conjunction
  - 2.2 introduced by a noun = relative clauses
    - 2.2.i subject relative clauses
    - 2.2.ii oblique relative clauses

Based on their meaning:

e.g.  
conditional subclauses  
temporal subclauses  
final subclauses  
causal subclauses

From a pragmatic perspective, clauses and sentences can also be classified based on their intention or effect.

A clause that has the form of a question can be used as a request/order.

*Do you know what time it is?* usually means *Tell me what time it is!*

## 1.1 Hierarchy

A clause (a higher level unit) consists of phrases (lower level units) and phrases consist of words (at an even lower level). This is often shown in tree diagrams, as in Waasuge's pdf.

**Hierarki** – en sats (enhet på högre nivå) består av fraser (enheter på lägre nivå) och fraserna består av ord (på en ännu lägre nivå). Dessa visas i träddiagram.

When we combine two items (words, phrases or clauses), we may do that through

coordination samordning  
subordination underordning

If they are connected through coordination, they have an equal status in the hierarchy. They are found at the same level, side by side.

shaah iyo sonkor coordination

If they are connected through subordination, one of the items is the **head (madax)** and the other is a **dependent (?Somali?)**.

shaah sonkor leh subordination  
madax dependent

magaalo weyn subordination  
madax dependent

Sometimes one head has several dependents. Then the dependents need to be coordinated.

magaalo weyn oo quruxsan  
madax dependent + dependent

In a phrase there is a **head word (eray-madaxeed)**, and in a sentence there is a **main clause (weer-madaxeed)**. The head word may take different **dependents**, usually called **modifiers**, and the main clause may take different **dependent clauses**, usually called **subordinate clauses** or subclauses.

Certain dependents are frequently called **complements** in order to emphasise the fact that certain dependents are specifically selected by the head and therefore sometimes also obligatory. E.g. we can't use the verb *cunaa* without a complement that denotes some kind of food.

Tufaax baan cunay.  
complement head

In the structure of a clause, one phrase dominates the other phrases. The predicate phrase dominates the noun phrases. The predicate (usually the verb in it (together with any prepositions) determines the number and character of the noun phrases in the clause. It determines the number of obligatory arguments. In addition, there may also be some optional NPs.

The choice of verb influences the number of argument NPs. There are often several different verbs based on the same root, and each one of those verbs with similar meaning, require a different set of arguments.

## 1.2 Grammatical Relations

The relations between the constituents, e.g. the predicate is the head of the clause and the predicate verb has different relations to different noun phrases, one is usually a subject, another one might be an object, an adverbial etc.

<i>karaa, kartaa</i>	subject (theme)	<i>biyo</i>	
<i>kariyaa, karisaa</i>	subject (agent)	oblique (theme) <i>hooyo</i> <i>biyo</i>	
<i>u kariyaa, karisaa</i>	subject (agent)	oblique (theme) <i>aabbe</i> <i>bariis</i>	oblique (beneficiary) <i>carruur</i>
<i>karsadaa, karsataa</i>	subject (agent & beneficiary)	oblique (theme) <i>aabbe</i> <i>bariis</i>	

These relations can be defined either based on form, function or meaning.

### Form

Form is expressed by the phrase itself. We can distinguish phrases with and without a **subject** morpheme or with different kinds of tone.

Somali has a base form and a subject form. If we find the subject form in a noun phrase, the function has to be subject, but if we find the base form, we can't tell the function of the phrase only based on the form of the phrase.

### Function

Function is indicated by the form if the subject is marked somehow. But function can also be derived from other phrases. The verb phrase often contains an inflection for person, gender and number, and the particle phrase often contains a short (clitic) subject pronoun. These two morphemes usually indicate the subject in a quite clear manner.

Another situation is at hand when the verb in a main clause is in the reduced form because the subject is focused. Then the focus particle clearly indicates the subject of the clause.

In Somali, the only two functions that are formally expressed by morphology and syntax are **subject** and **oblique** (= not subject). All other distinctions such as object, adverbial etc. are based on meaning, and therefore not really part of the grammatical structure.

### Meaning

Meaning is based on the semantics of individual words and the context in which the words occur. Typical categories are **agent**, **theme**, **beneficiary**, **time**, **place**, etc.

## 1.3 Agreement

Grammatical agreement means that certain parts of a sentence match with each other in certain ways. Agreement is a mechanism that helps ensure clarity with respect to meaning. It often concerns number, gender or person. Agreement shows that there is an important relation between the words that agree.

Important types of agreement in Somali are the following three.

### Verb & Subject

The verb must agree with the subject in number, person, and sometimes gender. E.g.

*Cali wuu ordaysaa.*

*Sahro way ordaysaa.*

### Pronoun & Antecedent

A pronoun must agree with its antecedent (the word that it refers to) in number and gender. E.g.

*Cali wuu ordaysaa.*

*Sahro way ordaysaa.*

*Kani waa koob.*

*Tani waa kab.*

## Adjective & Noun

In Somali, some adjectives often agree in number with the nouns they describe. E.g.

*buur weyn, buuro waa*weyn

## Other types of agreement

Other languages exhibit other types of agreement. As an example, some other Cushitic languages exhibit agreement in gender between adjective and noun. E.g.

*nama bareeda* 'a beautiful man'  
*dubartii bareedduu* 'a beautiful woman'      (Wikipedia)

Masculine	Feminine
ham-aa 'cunning/bad:m.'	ham-tuu 'cunning/bad:f.'
deer-aa 'tall/long-m.'	deer-tuu 'tall/long-f.'
furd-aa 'fat:m.'	furd-oo 'fat:f.'
<i>k'alPaa</i> 'thin:m.'	<i>k'alP-oo</i> 'thin:f.'

Source: Olani (2022).

## 1.4 Word order

Språk har viktiga regler för ordföljden, men det finns också en viss grad av möjlighet till variation.

Hur variationen används styrs av den betydelse (semantik) man vill uttrycka och den situation (pragmatik) man befinner sig i.

## Information structure

Olika typer av ordföld används för att strukturera informationen i satsen eller meningens på olika sätt. Man kan utgår från att vissa saker är bekanta från tidigare medan andra delar av information är ny och okänd eller kanske på något sätt oväntad. Man kanske vill betona någon lite extra. Beroende på sådana faktorer väljer man att placera satsdelarna i olika ordning i olika situationer, och i somaliskan väljer man också att använda olika satspartiklar.

När man studerar denna typ av variation brukar man säga att man studerar textens eller meningens **informationsstruktur**. Särskilt **ordföld** och **fokuspartiklar** är viktiga för somaliskans informationsstruktur.

## 1.5 Ambiguity

**Lexical ambiguity versus Structural ambiguity**

**Lexikal tvetydighet vs. Strukturell tvetydighet**

Å ena sidan kan ett ord göra att en mening blir tvetydig, å andra sidan kan ibland meningens grammatiska struktur göra att den blir tvetydig.

Mr Smith is too old to visit.

## 1.6 Well-formedness

**GRAMMATICAL WELL-FORMEDNESS** must be carefully distinguished from logical or semantic well-formedness. In syntax, we are only interested in grammatical well-formedness. Sentences may have strange meanings or no real meaning at all, but still be syntactically (= grammatically) well-formed.

*I am two years older from my sister.*

Ungrammatical – Our knowledge about grammar tells us that this is not okay.

*I am two years older than my mother.*

Gramamtically well-formed – but our knowledge about the world tells us that the content of this sentence is somehow wrong.

*I am two years smarter than my brother.*

Gramamtically well-formed – but our knowledge about the meaning of individual words tells us that this sentence is semantic non-sense.

## 1. Terminology

Subject Yeele

Oblique Mayeele

Agent Fale

Theme ??

## 1. Additional reading

Kroeger (2005), p. 1–6 + 7 + 26–38

<http://www.linguisticsnetwork.com/category/tutorials/tutorials-syntax/>

Zholkovskij. 1979. *Somali Syntax*. Appendix 6. Word classes, pp. 291-208.

WaaSuge. 1990. *Weeraynta Soomaaliga*.

Downloadable from <https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2513>

Edited version downloadable from <http://morgannilsson.se/WaaSuge1990Weeraynta.pdf>

Raabbi, Maxamed Xussen. 2009. *Qaan gaadh ee qaabku waa...: Qoraallo ku saabsan Afsoomaaliga*. Jabuuti: Machadka Afafka ee Jabuuti. (Cut. 4. Somali syntax.)

## 1. Old Exercises

1.1. Vad är syntax?

1.2. Vilka ordklasser har somaliskan? Ge två exempel på ord i varje ordklass. Hur kan man avgöra vilken ordklass ett ord hör till?

1.3. Vilka "europeiska ordklasser" behövs inte i somaliskan? Varför inte?

1.4. Vilka satsdelar har somaliskan? Ge ett exempel på en sats som innehåller alla typer av satsdelar. Analysera satsen.

1.5. Ge ett exempel på en kort somalisk mening som kan förstås på två olika sätt, s.k. **strukturell ambiguitet** eller tvetydighet. Förklara vilka de två betydelserna är och försök förklara **varför** meningen är tvetydig. (Det får alltså inte vara något specifikt ord i meningen som har två betydelser, då blir det lexikal ambiguitet i stället.)

1.6. Översätt exemplemeningarna nummer 7 a-f och sätt ett snedstreck mellan satsdelarna på samma sätt som man har gjort i 8 a-f. (sid. 28-29)

1.7. Översätt exemplemeningarna 10a, 10c, 12a och se om man kan flytta runt satsdelarna på olika sätt och att man får olika möjliga ordföljder. (sid. 30-31)

1.8. Översätt exempel 13a och ersätt sedan olika satsdelar med passande frågeord. (sid 31)

## Discussion 2022

1. Vad är syntax?

Satslära, alltså läran om språkets grammatiska uppbyggnad eller struktur, om hur ord förbinds med varandra till fraser, satser och meningar och texter. Man studerar strukturen på fraser, satser och meningar. Detta kallas syntax eller "weeraynta".

Weerayntu waa sida eray la isugu geeyo oo looga sameeyo weero ama qoraal.

2. Vilka ordklasser har somaliskan?

Ge två exempel på ord i varje ordklass. Hur kan man avgöra vilken ordklass ett ord hör till?

Somaliska ordklass:

- **Fal / Verb:** cunaa, keenaa, cabaa, akhriyaa, ordaa, boodaa, dilaa, kariyaa  
Verb böjs i tidsformer: joogto fudud: cunaa, socoto: cunayaa, tagto fudud: cunay, socoto; cunayey, caadaley: cuni jirey, timaaddo: cuni doonaa
- **Magac / Noun:** nin, hilib, guri, gabadh, wiil, kab, jid, miis, Maxamed, Cali, lug, gacan (sido kale tiraalayaasha: kow, labo...)  
Nouns take the definite article. Some nouns have a plural form.
- **Magacuyaal / Pronun:**  
aniga, adiga, isaga, iyada, annaga, innaga, idinka, iyaga  
aan, aad, uu, ay, la, aannu, aynu, aydin  
kayga, tayda, kaaga, taada...  
kan, tan, kuwan, kaas, taas, kuwaas...  
kee, tee, kuwee, kuma, tuma, kuwama
- **Sifo / Adjective:** weyn, yar, fiican, fudud, culus, fiican, toosan, dheer, buuran carfoon, kulul, qabow  
(sido kale jagaalayaasha: labaad)

Man kan inte böja orden i de övriga fyra ordklasserna

- **Qurub / Particle:** waa, baa, ayaa, waxaa, ma, ha
- **Horyaale / Preposition:** u, ku, ka, la.
- **Xiriiriye / Conjunction:** iyo, oo, -na, -se, ee, ama, mise, laakiin, waayo
- **Yaab / Interjection:** alluu, haa, hah, hayaay, hus, jaw, kac, kis, kud, wah, yur ...

Genom att undersöka ett ords **betydelse** (semantik), **böjning** (morfologi) och **funktion** i en sats (syntax) kan man bestämma ordets ordklasstillhörighet.

In baaro macnaha erayga(semantik), is rogrogga erayga(morfologi), dhisidda iyo isticmaalka erayada(syntax) sidaas ayaa lagu go'aamin ama ogaankaraa qaybta uu eraygu kaga jiro qaybaha hadalka(ordklasstillhörighet).

Betydelsen är tyvärr inte något pålitligt test. Böjningen är det säkraste testet.

3. Vilka "europeiska ordklasser" behövs inte i somaliskan?

Varför inte?

- **Falkaab** och **tiraale** för de kan tillhöra i substantiv (magac) gruppen.
- Adverb behöves inte i somaliska,

substantiven fungerar som adverbial.

Räkneord tillhör substantiv i somaliska

- Räkneord är sådana som vi använder ner vi räknar exempelvis siffror. Många europeiska språk har siffror som egen ordklass men ändå har inte somaliska en sådan ordklass. I somaliskan är räkneord antingen vanligt substantiv t.ex. "kowda duhurnimo" eller adjektiv t.ex. "fasalka afaraad."

- Adverb (Falkaab) somaliska behöver inte adverb då man använder fraser i form av substantiv och bestämning(adjektiv eller annat substantiv).

Tiraale iyo falkaab waayo labaduba waxa ay ka tirsan yihii magac ama sifo.

#### 4. Vilka satsdelar har somaliskan?

Ge ett exempel på en sats som innehåller alla typer av satsdelar. Analysera satsen.

- Yeele, layeеле, falkaab, qurub, khabar

Berri anigu waxa aan cuni doonaa hilib.

Berri= falkaab, anigu, aan= yeele, waxa= qurub, cuni doonaa= khabar, hilib= la yeele

- Faadumo waxa ay ogaatay in qooleydu garab ka jaban tahay.

Faadumo (Subjekt) waxa (satspartikel) ay (subjekt) ogaatay (predikat) in (bisatsinledare) qooleydu (subjekt) garab(objekt) (ka) preposition jaban tahay (predikat).

- Subjekt - Yeele (Y)

Satspartikel - Qurub weereed (Q)

Predikat - Khabar (Kh)

Objekt - Layeеле (L)

Adverbial Falkaab (Fk)

Cali waxa uu cashirka ku qoraya buugga.

(Y) (Q) (Y) (L) (Q) (Fk)

- Subjekt (Y) Yeele

Satspartikel (Q) Qurub weereed

Predikat (Kh) Khabar

Objekt (L) Layeèle

Adverbial (Fk) Falkaab

Exampel på en mening:

Cabdi waxa uu naxwaha ka dhigtaa jaamacadda Göteborg

Cabdi: yeel

waxaa: qurub-weereed

uu: magacuyaal yeele

Naxwaha: la yeele

Ka dhigtaa: Khabar

Jaamacadda Göteborg: falkaab

•		Subjekt	/	Yeele
Satspartikel	/		Qurub	weereed
Predikat		/		Khabar
Objekt		/		Layeele
Adverbial / Falkaab				

Dadkani (Y) waxa (Q) ay (Y) ku karsadaan (KH) cuntada (L) shoolad (F).

•

Subjekt = **Yeele**, Predikat = **Khabar**, Satspartikel = **Qurub weereed**, Objekt=**Layeele**,  
Adverbial= **Falkaab**

Satsdelar: **Cabdi waxaa uu ku cunaya bariis gacanta.**

I de följande två finns inte alla olika satsdelar.

**Asli wax baa ay dhisaysaa.**

**Isagu ma ordi karaa?**

## 5. Ge exempel på strukturell ambiguitet

Ge ett exempel på en kort somalisk mening som kan förstås på två olika sätt, s.k. **strukturell ambiguitet** eller **tvetydighet**. Förklara vilka de två betydelserna är och försök förklara **varför** meningen är tvetydig. (Det får alltså inte vara något specifikt ord i meningen som har två betydelser, då blir det lexikal ambiguitet i stället.)

- Nin baa /nin diley.

1. Den första "nin" framför fokusmarkören baa är subjekten.

Nin/ baa nin diley.

2. Om man betonar på andra nin framför predikaten diley så så den blir subjekten och den nin som står framför baa blir objekt.

- “Cali baa mas cunay”

Den här meningens kan förstås på två olika sätt:

1- Cali baa mas cunay = Ali åt en orm

2- Cali baa mas cunay= en orm åt Ali

• Nin                    baa                    libaax                    dilay

-En man dödade ett lejon. I det här fallet man betonar mannen som dödade lejon

-Ett lejon dödade en man. Men i det här fallet betonar man lejonet som dödade mannen

Wiilkii cagaha waynaa ayaa boolis qabtay maanta.

1- Pojken med stora fötterna har gripit polisen idag.

2- Polisen har gripit pojken med stora fötterna idag.

Den här meningens kan förstås på olika sätt. Det är inte tydlig vem som har gripit vem och därför kan skapa en förvirring. Är det pojken som har gripit polisen eller tvärt om.

## 6. Översätt exemplen

Översätt exempelmeningenarna nummer 7 a-f och sätt ett tecken mellan stadsdelarna på samma sätt som man har gjort i 8 a-f. (sid. 28-29)

1. Axmed ◊ waxa ◊ uu ◊ cunayaa ◊ bariis.
2. Fauzi ◊ waxa ◊ ay ◊ cunaysaa ◊ rooti.
3. Qofkani ◊ waxa ◊ uu ◊ cunayaa ◊ kalluun.
4. Eygaasi ◊ waxa ◊ uu ◊ cunayaa ◊ laf weyn.
5. Qofkaas weyni ◊ waxa ◊ uu ◊ cunayaa ◊ moos.
6. Axmed ◊ waxa ◊ uu ◊ cunayaa ◊ kallunkaas weyn.

1. Ahmed is eating rice.

Axmed waxa uu cunayaa bariis.

2. Fauzi is eating bread.

Fauzi waxa uu cunayaa rooti.

3. This person is eating fish.

Qofkani waxa uu cunayaa kalluun.

4. That dog is eating big bone.

Eygaasi waxa uu cunayaa laf weyn.

5. That old person is eating banana.

Qofkaas weyni waxa uu cunayaa muus.

6. Ahmed is eating that big fish.

Axmed wuxuu cunayaa kalluunkaas weyn.

7a- Axmed /waxa /uu /cunayaa /bariis.

7b- Fowzi /waxa /uu /cunayaa /rooti.

7c- Qofkani /waxa /uu /cunayaa /mallaaay.

7d- Egyani /waxa /uu /cunayaa /laf wayn.

7e- Qofkaa wayni /waxa /uu /cunayaa /moos.

7f- Axmed /waxa /uu /cunayaa /malayaas wayn.

• ‘Ahmad is eating rice.’ : |Axmed| /waxa/ /uu/ /Cunayaa/ /bariis/

‘Fauzi is eating bread.’ : |Foosi| /waxa| /uu| /cunayaa| /roodhi|

‘This person is eating fish.’ : |Qof|kan|i| /waxa| /uu| /cunayaa| /kalluun|

‘That dog is eating a big bone.’ : |Ey|gaas|i| /waxa| /uu| /cunayaa| /laf| /weyn|

‘That old person is eating a banana.’ : |Nin|kaa| /weyn|i| /waxa| /uu| /cunayaa| /muus|.

‘Ahmad is eating that big fish.’ : |Axmed| /waxa| /uu| /cunayaa| /kalluun|kaa| /weyn|

• a. Ahmed makan nasi

Axmed wuxuu/ cunayaa/ bariis

b. Fauzi makan roti

Axmed wuxuu/ cunayaa/ rooti

c. Orang ini makan ikan

Qofkani wuxuu/ cunayaa/ kalluun

d. Anjing itu makan tulang besar

Eygaas wuxuu/ cunayaa/ lafweyn

e. Orang tua itu makan pisang

Qofkaas weyn wuxuu/cunayaa/moos

f. Ahmed makan ikan besar itu

Axmed wuxuu/cunayaa/kalluunkaas weyn

**Axmed /waxa /uu /cunayaa /bariis.**

**Fowzi /waxa /uu /cunayaa /rooti.**

**Qofkani /waxa /uu /cunayaa /kalluun.**

**Eygani /waxa /uu /cunayaa /laf weyn.**

**Qofka weyni /waxa /uu /cunayaa /muus.**

Axmed /waxa /uu /cunayaa /kalluunkaas weyn.

## 7. Översätt och flytta satsdelarna

Översätt exempelmeningarna 10a, 10c, 12a och se om man kan flytta runt satsdelarna på olika sätt och att man får olika möjliga ordföljder. (sid. 30-31)

10) a. Qof kaas waayeelka ahi waxa uu cunayaa bariis shiilan.

- Bariiska shiilan waxa cunaya qof kaas waayeelka ah.

10) c. Hooyo lacag ayey siisey qof kaas waayeelka ah.

- Qofkaas waayeelka ah hooyo ayaa lacag siisey.
- Lacagta waxa qof kaas waayeelka ah siiyey hooyo. Who gave it?

12) a. Waxa aan cunay/cunayaa kalluun kaas weyn.

- Kalluunkaas waxa cunay/cunaya aniga.
- Aniga ayaa cunay/cunaya kalluun kaas weyn.

• 10a. Qofkaas waayeelka ahi waxa uu cunaa bariis shiilan.

Bariis shiilan ayuu cunaa qofkaas waayeelka ahi.

10c. Hooyadu lacag ayay siisaa qofkaa waayeelka ah.

Lacag ayay siisaa hooyadu qofkaas waayeelka ah.

12.a. Waxa aan cunayaa kalluunkaas weyn

Kalluunkaas weyn ayaan cunayaa.

• 10a- Qofkaa wayni waxa uu cunaa bariis shiilan

Bariis shiilan ayuu cunaa qofkaa wayni.

Qofkaa wayni bariis shiilan ayuu cunaa.

Waxa uu cunayaa qofkaa wayni bariis shiilan

10c- Hooyo lacag ayay siisaa ninkaas wayn.

Hooyo ninkaas wayn ayay lacag siisaa.

Ninkaas wayn ayay lacag siisaa hooyo.

Ninkaas wayn ayay hooyo lacag siisaa.

Hooyo waxay lacag siisaa ninkaas wayn.

Hooyo waxay ninkaas wayn siisaa lacag.

12a- Waxaan cunay/cunayaa mallaygaas wayn.

Mallaygaas wayn ayaan cunay/cunayaa.

Mallaygaas wayn waxaa cunay/cunaya aniga.

•

‘That old person eats fried rice.’ = Qofkaas weyni waxa uu cunaa bariis shiilan/duban.

‘Mother gives money to that old person.’ = Qofkaas weyn waxaa lacag siisa hooyo.

‘I ate/am eating that big fish.’ = Kalluunkaas weyn ayaan cunay/cunayaa.

•	10a.	[Orang tua]	makan	nasi	goreng
Qofkaas	weyn	wuxuu	cunaa	bariis	shiilay
Wuxuu	cunaa	qofkaas	weyni	bariis	shiilay
Wuxuu cunaa bariis la shiilay qofkaas weyn		weyni ???			

10c.	Ibu	memberi	wang	kepada	[orang	tua	itu]
Hooyo	way	siisaa		lacag	qofkaas		weyn
Lacag	way	siisaa		hooyo	qofkaas		weyn
Qofkaas	weyn	hooyo		lacag		way	siisaa
Way siisaa hooyo lacag qofka weyn							

12a.	Saya	makan	[ikan	besar	itu]
Waan	cunay/cunayaa		kalluunkaas		weyn
Kalluunkaas wayn waan cunay/ canayaa					

**10a.** Qofka waayeelka ahi wuxuu cunayaa bariis shiilan.

Bariiska shiilan waxa cunaya qofkaas waayeelka ah. **ahi ???**

**10c.** Hooyo ayaa lacag siisay qofkaas waayeelka ah.

Qofkaas weyn waxa lacag siisa hooyo.

**12a.** Waxa aan cunay kalluunkaas weyn.

Aniga ayaa cunay kalluunkaas weyn.

## 8. Översätt och ändra till frågor

Översätt exempel 13a och ersätt sedan olika satsdelar med passande frågeord. (sid 31)

- 13) a. Qof kaas waayeelka ahi waxa uu cunay kalluunka weyn.

- Ma qof kaas weyn baa cunay kalluunka weyn?
- Qof kaas waayeelka ah miyaa cunay kallunka weyn?
- Ma waxa uu qof kaas waayelka ahi cunay kalluunka weyn?
- Ma kaluun weyn buu qof kaas waayeelka ahi cunay?

- 1. Ma qofkaas weyn baa cunay kalluunka?

2. Yaa cunay kalluunkaas weyn.

3. Muxuu sameeyay qofkaas waayeelka ahi.

- Ayaa cunay mallaygii waynaa?

Kuma ayaa cunay mallaygii waynaa?

Yaa cunay mallaygii waynaa?

Qofkee cunay mallaygii waynaa?

Mallaygii waynaa kumaa/ayaa/yaa cunay?

**Maxay buu** cunay qofkaa wayni? **???? Muxuu / Maxaa uu**

Muxuu cunay qofkaa wayni?

‘That old person ate the big fish.’

= Qofkaas weyni waxa uu cunay kalluunkii weynaa

Yaa cunay kalluunkii weynaa?

Muxuu cunay qofkaasi, kalluun weynaa?

- [Orang tua itu] makan [ikan besar itu]  
13a. Qofkaas weyn ayaan cunay kalluunka wayn  
Kalluunka wayn ayaan uu cunay qofkaas weyn  
Qofkaas weyn ayaan kalluunka wayn cunay.

Ma qofkaas weyn baa cunay kalluunka weyn?

Kalluunka wayn miyuu cunay qofkaas weyn?

Ma waxaa uu qofkaas weyn cunay kalluunka wayn?

- - 13a. Waayeelkii wuxuu cunay kalluunkii weynaa.
    - Yaa cunay kalluunkaas weyn?
    - Waayeelku muxuu cunay?
    - Muxuu cunay qofkaas weyni?

## Unit 2

# Phrases & Phrase Order (< 6)

It is important to recognise that we don't simply put words together into clauses. There is one level in between. First we put words together into phrases, and then we put these phrases together into clauses. Phrases are like blocks of words that can be arranged in different orders to form clauses that are very similar, but still a little bit different. Usually the differences between clauses that contain the same phrases in different orders reflect different kinds of variation with respect to focus or emphasis targeting one or the other of the phrases.

Sahro < ayaa < shiilaysa < hilibka qaaliga ah.  
Sahro < waxa ay < shiilaysaa < hibka qaaliga ah.  
Sahro < hibka qaaliga ah < ayaa ay < shiilaysaa.  
Hilibka qaaliga ah < ayaa ay < shiilaysaa < Sahro.  
Hilibka qaaliga ah < waxaa < shiilaysa < Sahro.  
iwm.

Just like many (or most) other languages, Somali has **verb phrases** (VP; oraah-faleed, OF) and **noun phrases** (NP; oraah-magaceed, OM). In addition, Somali has **particle phrases** (PP; oraah-qurubeed, OQ). This kind of phrase is not very common in other languages.

Some kinds of phrases that are very common in English, such as preposition phrases (PreP; oraah-horyaaleed, OH), don't exist in Somali. Instead, Somali prepositions are part of the VP.

The following simple example shows that phrase structure differs quite a lot between languages. (The head word of each phrase is marked in boldface.)

*The students* < *live* < *in Boosaaso*.

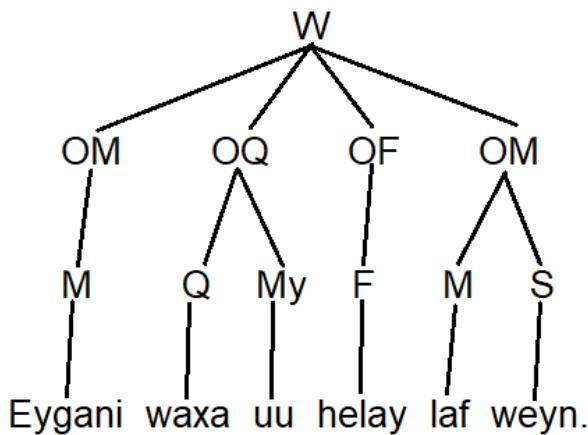
NP	VP	PreP
OM	OF	OH

*Ardaydu* < *waxa ay* < *ku nool yihiiin* < *Boosaaso*.

NP	PP	VP	NP
OM	OQ	OF	OM

### 2.1 Hierarchies & Nodes

The way in which words are organised into phrases and phrases into clauses is often illustrated with tree diagrams.



A **mother node** is a dominating node at an immediately higher level.

A **daughter node** is a dominated node at an immediately lower level.

In the above example, the mother node W (weer) has four daughter nodes. All four are in turn mother nodes to their daughter nodes, e.g., the mother node OQ has the two daughter nodes Q (qurub) and MY (magacuyaal yeele).

**Sister nodes** are two nodes at the same level with a common dominating mother node.

The two nodes Q and MY are sister nodes to each other, since they have the same mother node.

A **terminal node** is a node that does not dominate any daughter nodes.

In the above example, there are six terminal nodes: M, Q, MY, F, M, S.

A **terminal element** is a word that is dominated by a terminal node

## 2.2 Phrase structure rules

A Somali clause (W, weer) consists of an **obligatory particle phrase** (OQ, oraah-qurubeed) and an **obligatory verb phrase** (OF, oraah-faleed).

**The particle phrase always comes before the verb phrase.**

In addition, there may also be one or more **optional noun phrases** (OM, oraah-agaceed). They may occur in practically any position in the clause.

This may be shown schematically as

$$W \rightarrow (OM) \ OQ \ (OM) \ OF \ (OM)$$

The particle phrase must precede the verb phrase.

Noun phrases may occur anywhere.

The Somali phrase order scheme in English would look like this:

$S \rightarrow (NPs) PP (NPs) VP (NPs)$

NP = noun phrase, PP = particle phrase, VP = verb phrase

## Noun phrases

A noun phrase consists of an **obligatory noun**, which may be followed by an **optional modifier**, e.g. an adjective (S, sifo), a noun (M, magac) or a verb (F, fal).

$$OM \rightarrow M \begin{pmatrix} S \\ M \\ F \end{pmatrix}$$

This is however not the whole truth, and it would be more accurate to say that the head noun may be followed by an adjective phrase (OS, oraah-sifeed), a noun phrase (OM, oraah-magaceed) or a verb phrase (OF, oraah-faleed).

$$OM \rightarrow M \begin{pmatrix} OS \\ OM \\ OF \end{pmatrix}$$

magaaladu waa ay [aad u ballaran tahay]

OM M OQ OF

magaalo [aad u ballaaran ah]

OM M OF

magaaladii [aad u weynahayd]

OM M OF

magaalo weynaatay

As a matter of fact, research has shown that there is no need to use the category 'adjective phrase' in the syntactic analysis of Somali. Adjectives are always part of a verb phrase. And some researchers have taken this fact one step further, when they claim that there are no adjectives in Somali, only verbs. In this textbook, we will

however stick to the pedagogically simpler standpoint, that adjectives exist in Somali. However, they are always part of a verb phrase together with a form of the verb *yahay*.

The tricky thing is that the root morpheme /ah/ almost always disappears when it follows immediately after an adjective, i.e., when the verb root is not preceded by a prefix.

$$\mathbf{OF} = \mathbf{M} + \mathbf{F}$$

*... in uu wiilku [Soomaali yahay]  
wiil [Soomaali ah]  
wiilka [Soomaaliga ahi] wuu ...  
wiilkii [Soomaali ahaa]*

$$\mathbf{OF} = \mathbf{S} + \mathbf{F}$$

*... in wiilku [yar yahay]  
wiil [yar ah]  
wiilka [yarahi wuu] ...  
wiilkii [yarahaa]*

This makes our formula for the structure of noun phrases simpler:

A noun phrase always consists of a head noun (M) which may optionally be followed by a modifier noun phrase (OM) or verb phrase (OF)

$$\mathbf{OM} \rightarrow \mathbf{M} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbf{OM} \\ \mathbf{OF} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$$

## Particle phrases

A particle phrase (OQ, oraah qurubeed) usually consists of a **sentence particle** (QW, qurub weereed) followed by a short **subject pronoun** (MY, magacuyaal yeele).

$$\mathbf{OQ} \rightarrow (\mathbf{QW}) (\mathbf{MY})$$

Qurub-weereedyada: *waa, waxa, baa, ayaa, ma, ha, yaanu*.

Usually, one of the short subject pronouns *aan, aad, uu, ay, aannu, aynu, aydin* occur after the sentence particle in main clauses. Together they form the particle phrase and they often fuse into one word – a contraction.

*waxa aan / waxaan;    waxa uu / wuxuu;    waa aan / waan;    waa uu / wuu;  
ayaa aan / ayaan;    ayaa uu / ayuu;    baa aan / baan;    baa uu / buu*

Notice that the short subject pronoun *la* does not occur in the particle phrase together with the sentence particle, but together with the verb in the **verb phrase**.

*Muddo markii uu soo socday* ◊ *ayaa uu* ◊ *gurigii* ◊ *yimid.*

*Muddo markii la soo socday* ◊ *ayaa* ◊ *gurigii* ◊ *la yimid.*

It is also important to notice one of the two words, or even both words, may be absent in certain types of clauses.

In subordinate clauses, there is never any sentence particle in the particle phrase.

*Waxa aan<sup>OQ</sup>* ◊ *jeelaan lahaa<sup>OF</sup>* ◊ *in<sup>X</sup>* ◊ *aad<sup>OQ</sup>* ◊ *qof walba<sup>OM</sup>* ◊ *weydiiso<sup>OF</sup>.*<sup>1</sup>

In imperative clauses, there is no sentence particle and no short subject pronoun, i.e. there is no particle phrase.

*Halkan<sup>OM</sup>* ◊ *soo fadhiiso<sup>OF</sup>!*

In certain types of clauses the subject pronoun is optional. This is the case in:

- certain types of interrogative clauses

*Adiga iyo waalidkaa* ◊ *ma* ◊ *booqataan* ◊ *suuqa?*

- negative clauses

*Saxankani* ◊ *ma* ◊ *buuxo.*

cf. *Galaaskani* ◊ *waa uu* ◊ *buuxaa.*

- oblique subordinate clauses with a subject NP

*Uma malaynayo*

*in* ◊ *uu* ◊ *Maxamad Siciid* ◊ *gabadhaas* ◊ *jaceyl* ◊ *ku guursaday.*

*in* ◊ *Ø* ◊ *Maxamad Siciid* ◊ *gabadhaas* ◊ *jaceyl* ◊ *ku guursaday.*

X    OQ    OM                      OM              OF

However, a short subject pronoun usually occurs as the first word in subclauses that contain a subject NP. It is as if a short subject pronoun that occurs on its own, without being immediately preceded by a sentence particle, serves to indicate a subclause.

## Verb phrases

A verb phrase consists of an **obligatory verb** as the head of the phrase. The verb may be preceded by a large number of other **optional elements** in a very **strict order**.

OF → (MYAC) (MM) (H) (QJ) (QA) (QM) (S) (MD) F

<sup>1</sup> X = xiriiriye

Anigu u-la-ma aan jeedin in aan sheego in aanan dooneyn haweeney macallimad

The optional elements are:

- Indefinite subject pronoun (MYAC, magacuyaal yeele oo aan cayinnayn): *la*
- Oblique pronoun (MM, magacuyaal mayeele): *i, ku, na, ina, idin, is*
- Preposition (H, horyaale): *u, ku, ka, la*
- Negation particle (QD, qurub-diidmeed): *ma*
- 2<sup>nd</sup> Oblique pronoun (MM2, magacuyaal mayeele labaad): *kay, kaa, keen, kayo, kiin*
- Viewpoint particle (QA, qurub-aragtiyeed): *soo, sii*
- Direction particle (QJ, qurub-jiheed): *kala, wada*
- Location particle (QM, qurub-meeleed): *ag, hor, dhex.....*
- Adjective (S, sifo)
- Infinitive (MD, masdar)

The only obligatory element is the head of the phrase:

Verb (F, fal)

More about verb phrases will follow in Unit 7.

## Discussion 2022

There are positive declarative clauses without a clitic pronoun:

*Webigu waa fatahay dyrtan.*

*Xasan dheere waa toosay imminka.*

## Unit 3

### The Functions of Pronouns (< 6)

#### 3.1 Gender & Number

Somali has a two gender system, where nouns are either masculine and feminine. Only in a handful of Somali nouns biological and grammatical gender do not coincide: *sac, xaas* are masculine nouns with feminine biological gender. In collective nouns

there is no connection between biological and grammatical gender: *haween*, *dumar* are masculine, while *carruur* is feminine.

Gender determines the inflectional patterns of nouns, such as plural formation and determiner suffixes (definite, demonstrative and possessive determiner suffixes, subject, numerative and vocative case suffixes).

In the singular, gender also determines the agreement forms of pronouns and verbs. In the plural, however, pronouns and verbs do not distinguish between genders; they have only one plural form. This means that there is no gender agreement in the plural, and it is therefore irrelevant to discuss the gender of a plural noun. Gender is only relevant in the singular.

<i>gabarta</i>	→ SING. FEM.	<i>iyada</i>	<i>way heesaysaa</i>
<i>wiilkha</i>	→ SING. MASC.	<i>isaga</i>	<i>wuu heesayaaa</i>
<i>gabdahaha</i>	→ PLUR.	<i>iyaga</i>	<i>way heesayaan</i>
<i>wiilasha</i>	→ PLUR.	<i>iyaga</i>	<i>way heesayaan</i>

## 3.2 Pronouns

Pronouns are nouns; they constitute a special subcategory of nouns. The reference or semantic interpretation of pronouns is not fixed. Everything depends on the context. They may refer to something in the situation, or something that has been mentioned in the discourse. Pronouns can be used for **deixis** or **anaphora**.

**Deixis**, or deictic use of pronouns and other words with deictic determiner suffixes, means pointing to something outside the discourse, something in the real world, in the **speech situation**, i.e. the time and place of the discourse, e.g.

*aniga, adiga, kan, tan, kaas, taas...*

*hadda, halkan, halkaas...*

*Waar, ii keen mindidaas!*

**Anaphora**, or anaphoric use of pronouns and determiner suffixes, means referring back to something that has been previously mentioned in the discourse. The word that one refers back to is called the **antecedent**. An anaphoric pronoun or determiner suffix refers back to the same referent (person, object, place...) as the antecedent.

*Faadumo hooyadeed saddex maalmood ka hor ayaa ay umushay.*

Sometimes the antecedent follows after the anaphoric pronoun.

*Midabbadee ayaa ay kala lahaayeen dibiyadu?*

Many pronouns and determiner suffixes can be used both for deixis and anaphora. The so called referential pronouns and determiners *kii*, *tii*, *kuwii* are however only used anaphorically. They cannot be used to point at an object that is present in the speech situation.

### 3.3 Proximity

There are different demonstrative pronouns depending on the distance to the object referred to by the deictic pronoun or determiner suffix.

close	<i>kan</i>	<i>tan</i>	<i>kuwan</i>
distant	<i>kaa(s)</i>	<i>taa(s)</i>	<i>kuwaa(s)</i>

(It has been suggested by Ahmed Y. Hirad (2014: 22f) that the demonstratives ending in *-aa* are the unmarked ones, and that the forms in *-aas* are used for contrast.) Do you agree?

### 3.4 Reflexive pronouns

The reflexive pronoun *is* is always anaphoric. In Somali the antecedent may be in the 1<sup>st</sup> or 2<sup>nd</sup> person as well as the 3<sup>rd</sup> person, both singular and plural.

*examples*

The meaning is often reciprocal if the antecedent is in the plural.

*Asli iyo Cali baa is jeclaaday.*

*Waa in aynu had iyo jeer is caawinnaa.*

In English there are different reflexive pronouns for each person (*myself*, *yourself*, *herself*...), and in Swedish the reflexive pronoun *sig* can only refer to a 3<sup>rd</sup> person antecedent. In Slavic languages the reflexive pronoun can refer to any person, just like in Somali.

Both English and Swedish have special reciprocal pronouns (*each other*; *varandra*, *varann*) that are not the same as the reflexive pronouns.

### 3.5 Emphatic pronouns

Light emphasis is expressed by the long forms of the personal pronouns which can be used as an addition to the short forms.

*examples*

Strong emphasis is expressed by certain nouns carrying the possessive determiner ending denoting the person, e.g. *laf-tayda*, *laf-taada*, *laf-tiisa*, *laf-teeda*...

*Aniga laftayda waxa uu si adag ii weydiiyay xaaladdayda caafimaad.*

Emphatic pronouns are not used anaphorically. Instead they are used together with the antecedent NP that they refer to, so to say 'doubling' it. This is referred to as **apposition**.

### 3.6 Agreement of Pronouns

The pronouns agree with their antecedent. They agree in number (singular or plural), and in the singular they also agree in gender (masculine or feminine).

The three forms *aan*, *aad*, *ay* are however special. They can be used with both singular and plural reference.

Somali also has exclusive and inclusive personal pronouns in the 1<sup>st</sup> person plural:

exclusive: *annaga*, *aannu*, *na*, *kayaga*, *tayada*

inclusive: *innaga*, *aynu*, *ina*, *keenna*, *teenna*

The long forms *isaga*, *iyada*, *iyaga* are mainly used to refer to persons, and only seldom to inanimate objects. Referring to objects, the demonstrative pronouns *kan*, *tan*, *kaa(s)*, *taa(s)* are preferred.

### 3.7 The gap in Somali object pronoun inventory

There are no short 3<sup>rd</sup> person object pronouns in Somali that would correspond to him, her, it, them. There are only short object pronouns in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person:

*i*, *ku*, *na*, *ina*, *idin*

If a transitive verb is used in a clause without an object NP, this functions as an indication that a 'specific' object (in the third person) is intended, and a translation into English usually needs an object pronoun.

*example*

### 3. Terminology

deixis	[dəɪksɪs]	deixis
anaphora		anafora
gender	cayn (-ta)	genus
number	tiro	numerus
pronoun	magacuyaal	pronomen
reflexive pronoun	magacuyaal celis magacuyaal noqod	reflexivt pronomen
reciprocal pronoun		reciprokt pronomen
emphatic pronoun		emfatiskt pronomen

### 3. Additional reading

Maxamed X. Xuseen Raabbi. 2022. Dareerinta ereyada weedha af-Soomaaliga. *Somali Studies* 7. 132-143. <http://www.isos.so/index.php/journal/>

Read: Kroeger (2005), Chapter 8: § 8.1–8.1.1 (p. 128-131) and § 8.2–8.2.5 (p. 135–143).

Zholkovskij. 1979. *Somali Syntax*.

Appendix 1. The rules for inserting short-form subject pronouns. pp. 269–276,  
Appendix 4. Concerning the absence of a sentence particle from a sentence, 283–4,  
Appendix 5. The problem of the particle *waxa*, pp. 285-290.

### 3. Old Exercises

6.1 Give three examples of Somali sentences with different pronouns that are used anaphorically. What is the antecedent?

6.2 Give three examples of Somali sentences with different pronouns that are used deictically.

6.2 Give one example of a Somali sentence with an anaphoric pronoun that precedes the antecedent.

6.3 Can you think of any other noun than *laf* that can be used with possessive determiner suffixes to express emphasis in a similar way as English ‘myself, yourself...’?

6.4 Do you agree with the claim that “the long forms *isaga*, *iyada*, *iyaga* are mainly used to refer to persons, and only seldom to inanimate objects. Referring to objects, the demonstrative pronouns *kan*, *tan*, *kaa(s)*, *taa(s)* are preferred.” Can you think of an example or two where this is contradicted, and the long personal pronouns are used to refer to inanimate objects?

6.5 Give two examples of sentences with the reflexive pronoun where it is used to refer to an antecedent in the 1<sup>st</sup> and the 2<sup>nd</sup> person, respectively.

6.6 Give two examples of sentences with the reflexive pronoun where it is used in its reflexive meaning (not the reciprocal meaning) with an antecedent in the plural.

6.7 Give two examples of sentences with a gap indicating a 3<sup>rd</sup> person object.

6.8 Give one example each of clauses with the constituent structure

- a. NP PP VP NP
- b. PP VP NP
- c. PP NP VP
- d. NP PP VP
- e. NP PP NP VP NP

6.9 Pick a authentic text and find in it five random complex sentences containing a subclause which contains a subject NP. Look for short subject pronouns in the subclauses. In what position do they occur?

# Discussion 2022

## 6.1

Give three examples of Somali sentences with different pronouns that are used anaphorically. What is the antecedent?

### Grupp 2

- **Xasan adeerkii** laba bilood ka hor ayaa **uu** dhintay. (Adeerkii)
- Xaafaddee ayaa **ay** degganayd **gabadhu?** (Gabadhu) **antecedent efter pron.**
- Liinta dhanaankeeda waa aan ka ilmeeyaa. (**Dhanaankeeda**)

Xasan ← kii      adeerkii ← uu

liinta ← keeda

### Grupp 4

**Canab** waxay **ay** barataa Af-soomaali.

**Cabdul** waxa **uu** qoray buug.

**Miiskan** waa **kii** jabnaa.

### Grupp 3

1. Maxammed waxa **uu** Faadumo u ballan qaaday in **uu** u nadiifinayo gurigeeda. **Maxammed är antecedent till uu, Faadumo är antecedent till keeda.**

2. Aamina gabadheedu waxa **ay** walaalkeed fartay farriin, laakiin waxa **ay** ka cadsatay in **uu** ka qariyo fariintaas dadka kale. **Aamina gabadheedu är antecedent till ay, walaalkeed är antecedent till uu och fariinta är antecedent till taas**

Aamina ← -dheedu, -keed

3. Markii **uu** Geeddi yimid caloolxanuun baa qabatay. **Geeddi är antecedent till uu.**

### Grupp 5

**Askariga badbaaday saaxiibkii** dagaalka ayaa **uu** ku dhintay.

**Alaabta** timid waa **ay** fiican tahay.

Cuntadee baa **ay karisay gabadhu?**

**Anigu** waxa **aan** caawiyaa waalid**key**. **I & 2 person – deictic pronouns**

Antecedent is a noun or noun phrase which usually comes before or precedes the anaphoric element, and sometimes anaphoric precedes antecedent.

## 6.2

Give three examples of Somali sentences with different pronouns that are used deictically.

### Grupp 2

orod oo ii keen alaabtaas

Nimankan yaa wacay

Kuwaas ayaa ka mid ah ardaydii Morga

### Grupp 4

- Maxammed ayaa leh gaarigaas (**kaas**)

Buuggan waa kii Hinda (**kan**)

Mindidaas waa ay af badan tahay (**taas**)

### Grupp 3

Iyadu waxay la hadlaysaa qofkaas.      3 persons personal pronouns – deictic or anaphoric

Isagu wuu socadaalayaa.

Iyagu waxay samaynayaan casharkooda.

### Grupp 5

1. Baraha qalinkaas sii wax ha ku qoree
2. Mirkaas muuska ah cun adigu!
3. Halkan baan ku arkay Libaax shalay galab.
4. Anigu waxba kama qabo arrintaas

## 6.2 (b)

Give one example of a Somali sentence with an anaphoric pronoun that precedes the antecedent.

### Grupp 2

Xaadde ayaa **ay** degganayd **gabadhu**?

#### Grupp 4

**Fiidmeertu** waxa **ay** nuujisaa ilmeheeda.

#### Grupp 3

Waxa **uu macallinku** u ballanqaaday ardayda ina aanu ka joojin doonin ciyaartooda.

#### 6.3

Can you think of any other noun than *laf* that can be used with possessive determiner suffixes to express emphasis in a similar way as English ‘myself, yourself...’?

#### Grupp 2

Qudh: qudhayda

Laf: laftayda

Ruux : ruuxayga

Sida: Sidayda

Naf: naftayda

#### Grupp 4

Axmed waa **wiilkayga**

Wiil geeljira ahoo gorof**kiisa** sitaa,

waa waxa **dhulkeenna** ugaarohoo laynagu gartaa

#### Grupp 3

Dawcadii **nafteeda** ayay la baxsatay oo way carartay.

Iyaga **iskooda** ayay u joojiyeen dagaalka.

Innaga **darteenna** ayay u yimaadeen. **på grund av oss, för vår skull (?)**

#### Grupp 5

Aniga qudhayda waxa aan ahay mucaarad.

Iyada qudheeda/ruuxeeda waa mucaarad.

## 6.4

Do you agree with the claim that “the long forms *isaga*, *iyada*, *iyaga* are mainly used to refer to persons, and only seldom to inanimate objects. Referring to objects, the demonstrative pronouns *kan*, *tan*, *kaa(s)*, *taa(s)* are preferred.” Can you think of an example or two where this is contradicted, and the long personal pronouns are used to refer to inanimate objects?

### Grupp 2

Maya

### Grupp 4

Partly but not always, because you may see where both forms av pronouns used in both persons and objects. for example.

Axmed : - Saacaddaydii ma aragtay?

Cali: - Maya. waxay haystaa taydii oo kaliya

Axmed: - Iyada nafteeda i tus aan iska hubiyee!

Jaamac waa **kan** ugu yar caruurtayda. **Tanina** waa Maryan, waa **tii** Jaamac ka wayneed.

**Yes, Demonstrative pronouns often refer to people.**

### Grupp 3

Kuma raacsanin: tusaale

Kani waa baabuur.

Baabuurku isaga ayaa iskii u xumaaday. **I denna meningssturktur måste man använda *isaga*.**

Ma qalinkan baad rabtaa? Isagaba i sii. / Kanba i sii.

### Grupp 5

Yes, they are referring to person singular, masculine, feminine and plural both masculine and feminine (mostly they are referring back to animate and seldomly inanimate), but **kan**, **tan**, **kaas**, **taas** used to refer both animate and inanimate.

Isaga oo dhagax **uu** soo dhacayo ayuu wiilku hoos joogay.

Iyada oo dabayli **ay** dhacayso ayaan dibedda joognay.

## 6.5

Give two examples of sentences with the reflexive pronoun where it is used to refer to an antecedent in the 1<sup>st</sup> and the 2<sup>nd</sup> person, respectively.

### Grupp 2

In badan su'aashan **waan is** weydiiyey.

Berigii aad yarayd **waad is** daawan jirtay.

### Grupp 4

Waxaa is iri malaha waad qarwaysaa.

Maantay waad is carfisay.

### Grupp 3

- Anigu waan **isla** hadlay.
- Adigu waad **isla** wayn tahay.    isla wayn – arrogant

Aniga iyo adigu waxaan isla wadnaa shaqada

### Grupp 5

1. **Anigu** waan **is mahadiyey/ annagu** waan **is mahadinay**. 1st person sing/plural.

2. **Adigu** waad **is** daalisay/ **idinku** waad **is** daaliseen. 2nd person sing/plural.

## 6.6

Give two examples of sentences with the reflexive pronoun where it is used in its reflexive meaning (not the reciprocal meaning) with an antecedent in the plural.

Waxay isu sheegeen...

### Grupp 2

1- U sheeg carruurta in ay sheekhada **isu** akhriyaan.    reciprokt

2– Labadii walaalaha ahaa way **is** raaceen.    reciprokt

### Grupp 3

- Gaari baanu u soo gadanay nafteena.
- Cunto ayey u karsadeen naftooda.

Wasiirradi way is casileen

Om det bara finns ett subjekt så är *is* alltid reflexivt.

### Grupp 5

1. Labada shay waa **is** leeyihiin. reciprokt

2. Xasan baa Maryama arkay + Maryama baa Xasan aragtay = Xasan iyo Maryama waa ay **is** arkeen. reciprokt

### 6.7

Give two examples of sentences with a gap indicating a 3<sup>rd</sup> person object.

### Grupp 2

buugaagta u qaybi      recipient

Buugaagta sii

### Grupp 4

Axmed baa ii yimid oo fureyaal doonaya. **Waxaan siiyay laba fure oo kaliya.**

Caasha waa ay bixisay daynkii. **Aniga ayaa ka qaaday saakay.**

### Grupp 3

(Isaga)                  waxa                  la                  O                  siiyay                  hadiyad.  
(Annaga) waxa lana siiyay hadiyad.

Ayaga waxa la siiyay hadiyad.

### Grupp 5

1. Waan arkay.                  (iyada, isaga, iyaga, kaas, taas, kuwaas)

2. Aniga ayaa baray casharka (iyada, isaga, iyaga).

Taas oo ah macneheeda iyada ayaan arkay ama iyaga ayaan arkay ama isaga ayaan arkay.

### 6.8

Give one example each of clauses with the constituent structure

a.	NP	PP	VP	NP
b.	PP	VP	NP	NP
c.	PP	NP	VP	VP
d.	NP	PP	NP	VP
e.	NP	PP	NP	VP

## Grupp 2

1. PP VP NP : Wuu bilaabmay casharkii
2. PP NP VP: Wuxuu macallinku dhigaa **cashar**.
3. NP PP VP : **Ninka heesaa** wuu baqdaa
4. NP PP NP VP NP: Cabdisalaam wuxuu Afka hooyo ka dhigaa Göteborg.

## Grupp 4

1. NP PP VP NP Daahir wuxuu cunay sagaaro
2. PP VP NP Waxay dabateen sagaaro
3. PP NP VP Maynu sagaarada bireyno
4. NP PP VP Sagaaradii ayay soleen
5. NP PP NP VP NP Daahir wuxuu sagaarad u dhigay dabin.

## Grupp 3

a) **Wiil soomaali ah ayaa badiyey ciyaaraha fudud.**

NP PP VP NP

b) **Waxaa yimid walaalkay.**

PP VP NP

c) **Waxaa saddexda buug qoray wasiirka.**

PP NP VP NP

d) **Laba jeer ayaan Khaldamay.**

NP PP VP

c) **Ayaan baa waalidkeed geysey xajka.**

NP PP NP VP NP

## Grupp 5

- a. NP PP VP NP a. Cabdi waa cunay quraacda.
- b. PP VP NP b. Waa arkay gabadha /Waxaa tegay toban nin.
- c. NP+PP NP VP c. **Yuu** / Yaa Maxamed raacay? [Ayo]<sup>NP</sup>+[baa+uu]<sup>PP</sup> > yaa uu > yuu
- d. NP PP VP d. Wiil baa qoslay.
- e. NP PP NP VP NP e. Caasha baa dab saartay dheri.

Maxaa, muxuu

## 6.9

Pick a authentic text and find in it five random complex sentences containing a subcluase which contains a subject NP. Look for short subject pronouns in the subclauses. In what position do they occur?

### Grupp 2

Dabayl xoog leh ayay ku soo aadey Caasha, inkasta oo ay qorraxdu sii dhaceysyo, cirkuna saafi yahay, haddana waxay dareemeysa qaboow xoog badan oo jaakada uga soo dhix duseya. Waxay soo gaartey goobtii baska lagu sugaayey. Goobta lagu sugo baska waxaa uga soo horeeyey dad badan oo kale, oo isugu jira waayeel iyo carruurba. Meel ay Caasho dhaxanta ka gasho ma aysan jirin, sidaas awgeed ayay geeska kale istaagtay, si ay uga gabato dhaxanta xooga leh ee socota.

### Grupp 4

Axmed waxa uu u shaqeeyaa warshada Volvo, warshaddu wax ay soo saartaa gawaarida yaryar iyo kuwa waawaynba. Amxed waxa uu toosaa aroota hore inta ay dadka oo idili hurdaan. Warashaddu waa ay ka fogtahay Axmed halka uu daggan yahay, waxa ay ku qaadataa saacado badan si uu u tago goobta shaqada marka uu raaco gaadiidka dadweynaha. Laakiin waxa caawisa Sofiya oo ay daris yihin.

### Grupp 3

Xakameynta Welwelka

- Ugu horreyntii, waa in **aan** kala saarnaa, **waxyaabaha aan** wax ka qaban **karno**, iyo kuwa **aynaan** waxba ka qaban **karin**, kaddib waxaan diiradda saari **karnaa** **waxa la beddeli karo**," ayuu yiri Agnaldo Piscopo, oo ah khabiirka ku takhasusay arrimaha wadnaha.

**PP NP VP, NP NP NP VP, NP NP NP VP, PP NP NP VP NP VP, PP NP VP NP, VP NP PP VP NP.**

### Grupp 5

Maxamuud waxaa **uu** codsaday, **inaan qofna faragelin** **shaqadiisa uu** hayo. Sidaa daraadeed, dadweynuhu waxaa **ay** ballan qaad u sameeyeen in **uu** xor u yahay shaqada. Taas baa keentay **in uu** shaqada u qabto si kalsooni buuxda ah. Markii **la** gaadhey, doorashada ayaa **ay** Caasha tiri **in** Maxamuud **ay** u diidan tahay faragelinta doorsahada **la** **qaban doono**. Innaga ayaa ka markhaati noqon doonaa **waxa uu** Maxamuud samayn doono doorashada dhacaysa gudeheeda.

**The red color represents anaphoric (referring back).**

**The blue color represents preceding anaphorical.**



# Unit 4

## The Subject–Predicate Relation

### Case & Agreement (< 5)

#### 4.1 Grammatical relations between subject NP and predicate VP

When a verb occurs together with its arguments and adjuncts, there is a need to express which NP plays which semantic role, i.e. what is the grammatical relation between the verb and each one of the NPs in the clause. Above all it is important to know which NP is the subject (and which is the object) of the verb.

Languages have three important strategies to show these relations between the verb and the NPs.

– **WORD ORDER.** This is the most important tool in English and Swedish. The subject usually comes before the verb, and the object after the verb.

In most Somali sentences, the subject precedes both the verb and the object, but this is not a strict rule. Somali sentences may very well end with the subject. So there is no way to be sure about the grammatical roles of NPs in Somali only based on the word order.

– **CASE FORMS.** This is the most important tool in Classical Arabic, Latin and Slavic languages. The words in the subject NP have different endings when they function as the subject and the object.

In Somali the last word of the subject NP is usually marked with one of the three **SUBJECT CASE ENDINGS**, *-u*, *-i*, or *-aa*.

– **AGREEMENT (Sw. KONGRUENS).** This is a very important tool in a very large number of languages. Many languages have different forms of the verb when the subject NP is singular and plural. Some languages, like Somali, also have different verb forms when the singular subject is feminine and masculine.

It is also important to notice that a variation is often possible between **GRAMMATICAL** and **SEMANTIC AGREEMENT** between the subject NP and the verb. Grammatical agreement means that the verb agrees with the grammatical form of the head noun in the subject NP. Semantic agreement means that the verb agrees with the meaning of the word(s) in the subject NP.

In some languages prepositions at the beginning of NPs help identify the semantic roles of these NPs.

*She gave the book **to** the student.*

This is however not a tool that works in Somali, since the prepositions are placed in the predicate VP directly in front of the verb. There is no formal way to know which NP a preposition refers to. We only know that based on the meaning in the context.

In Somali two more tools are quite important for identifying the subject of a clause.

- **SUBJECT PRONOUNS.** The subject is usually expressed by a subject pronoun, even if it is at the same time expressed by an NP.
- **FOCUS PARTICLES.** The subject is usually the focused NP if there is no subject pronoun in a main clause. The predicate verb is in the reduced form when the subject is focused.

## 4.2 The Subject–Predicate Relation

The grammatical relation between the subject and the predicate is expressed in several ways:

- through morphological **subject marking/ending** of the subject NP,
- through a clitic (short) **subject pronoun**,
- through the **inflection of the verb** in person, number and gender based on agreement with the subject NP. Adjectives in the predicate VP may also agree in number.

The realisation of the subject marking and agreement is however dependent on the type of focus that is applied in the clause.

If the subject NP is focused,

- the subject NP is not subject marked
- there is no clitic subject pronoun, and
- the predicate verb shows agreement with reduced forms.

*Wiilka baa ordanya, (gabadhuna way jiiftaa.)*

If the subject NP is not focused,

- the subject NP is subject marked
- there is normally a clitic subject pronoun, and
- the predicate verb shows agreement with full forms.

*Wiilkii wuu ordayaa.* (waa fokuserar predikatet.)

Notice that the clitic (short) subject pronoun, *uu* in the preceding example, is almost obligatory in standard Somali.

The only exception is that the subject may occur between the focus particle and the predicate verb without any subject pronoun.

*Maalin dambe ayaa (ay) balanbaalisi ubaxii soo dul martay.*

*Sida Jubba oo kale ayaa (ay) bahallo wax cunaa ku jiraan webi Shabelle.*

#### 4.2.1 Focus and Case

If the subject NP is **focused**, the subject case endings are **not used**.

*Wiilka baa ordanya.*

Only if the subject is **not focused**, the subject case endings are **used**.

*Wiilk uuu ordayaan.*

The subject ending is a **phrasal suffix**, i.e. it is added at the end of the whole phrase, to the last word in the subject NP.

*Wiilka iyo gabadhu way ordayaan.*

-*u* is added to nouns and pronouns instead of the final -*a* found in the basic form.

-*i* is added to adjectives, pronouns, indefinite feminine nouns and some verb forms that end in a consonant.

*Maalin dambe ayaa balanbaalisi ubaxii soo dul martay.*

-*aa* is added to many verb forms ending in a vowel, and to the adjective *kasta*.

*Sida Jubba oo kale ayaa bahallo wax cunaa ku jiraan webi Shabelle.*

based on the simple phrase: *bahallo wax cuna*

In many other instances the subject case is not marked in writing.

*Isla markiiba waraabihii waxa uu ku soo boodey gabadhi.*

*Maxaa ay Maryan dugsiga u tagi weydey?*

It should be noted that Somali, just like English and most European languages, makes a distinction between subject and object, which are marked by different cases. In many European languages as well as Arabic these two cases are called the nominative (for subjects) and the accusative (for objects). In the Somali tradition the terms nominative and accusative are not used very much.

Instead the subject case is a very common label. The other case, the one that is used in all other functions, for all obliques, both complements and adjuncts, as well as citation form (when a word is not used in a clause, but just mentioned on its own, e.g. in a wordlist or dictionary) has been called many different things, e.g. the absolute case, the absolute case or the base form. The **base/basic form** is a very good label since it tells us that this is the most widely used form, and that the subject form is “special”.

The term **absolutive** is misleading since it implies that Somali would not be a nominative–accusative language, but an ergative–absolutive language, which is something completely different, which Somali is definitely not.

#### 4.2.2 Focus and reduced verb forms

Usually the focused NP is the subject in clauses without a subject pronoun.

When a focus NP is the subject, the predicate verb must occur in the reduced form.

*Gurigayga niman badan baa caawa jooga.*

*Gurigayga marti baa caawa joogta.*

*Madaxa ayaa i xanuuunaya.*

*Gabaygan waxa curiyey Xaaji Aadan.*

*Dawacadii ayaa aragtay eygii.*

Notice that the reduced verb forms ending in *-a*, *-ay* are both plural and masculine singular, whereas *-ta*, *-tay* is feminine singular.

	PRESENT	PAST
M.SG.	-a	-ay
F.SG.	-ta	-tay
PL.	-a	-ay

#### Discussion: Reduced verb form in the plural

Give an example of a focused **plural NP** with a verb in the reduced plural form.

Maanta **wadaaddadii** baa **hibikii** **cunay**.

Guriga **niman** baa **jooga**.

**nibiriyo** **badan** ayaa ka **buuxa** badda Baasifik.

**Niman** baa dullaan **qaaday**. motsvarar full form: qaadeen

**Carruur** ayaa layliga **qoraysa**. / ?qoraya  
f.sg. pl.

Carruurtu layliga ayay **qoraysaa / qorayaan**  
f.sg. pl.

**Raashinka** waxaa **cunay** bisado.

### 4.3 Subject–Predicate Agreement

The predicate verb agrees with the subject NP and takes the same gender and number form. If the subject NP is plural the verb will be plural, if it is masculine singular or feminine singular, the verb will take the same form.

*Dawacadii ayaa arag<sup>tay</sup> eygii.* Since *eygii* is masculine, it cannot be the subject.

Sometimes the form of the head noun of the subject NP and the meaning of the subject NP are in conflict. Then the predicate verb can often be used in two different forms, even though individual speakers may have a strong preference for one or the other form. Sources of such variation are above all collective nouns and numerals,

Grammatical agreement – singular verb form:

*Sidee carruurtu xoolaha u kala raaci jirtey?*

Semantic agreement – plural verb form:

*Xaggee ayaa ay carruurtu sheekada ka soo dhegeysan jireen?*

The two different forms of the verb show that the verb may agree with the singular form of the subject noun. This is referred to as **grammatical or syntactic agreement**. The verb may also agree with the “plural” meaning of the subject noun. This is referred to as **semantic agreement**.

More examples:

*Digaaggu waxa uu u baahnaa cunto qaali ah.* (Af-Soomaali 6, Nayroobi 2001: 40)

*...jeermis ku dhasha noolayaasha ay ka mid yihin digaaggu...* (camuudnews.net)

It is normally the case that grammatical agreement occurs closer to the subject NP, and semantic agreement further away from that NP.

*Carruurtu waa in ay haysato hoy ay seexdaan.*

*Waxa la yiri beri baa habar-dugaag afarta jiho isaga timid oo ku soo shireen raq dusheed.*

*Maxaa ay beeraleydu samaysaa si ay beerta uga ilaaliyaan waxyeellada dabaysha?*  
(Saynis 2, Hargeysa 2010)

Also masculine nouns exhibit variation in their agreement patterns when referring to a woman, e.g. *bare*, *xaas*, *madaxweyne*, *wasiir*, etc.

*Xaasku ummul ayey ahayd, waxayna uga warrantay wixii galabta dhacay.*

### Discussion: Singular/plural variation in predicate

Give examples of clauses where the same subject NP can be followed by a verb in both the singular and the plural.

Dumarku waa uu masayraa. grammatisk överensstämmelse – kongruens – agreement  
Dumarku waa ay masayraan. semantisk

laget är väl förberett.  
laget är väl förberedda.

Dharku waa kugu yar yahay. (storlek)  
Dharku waa kugu yar yihiin. (mängden kläder är liten)

Dumarku waa ay tolaan dharka. semantisk kngruens.

Muslimiintii baa tukatay.  
Xagee baa ay muslimiintii ku tukadeen.

1. Xaggee ayay Soomaalidu u qaxeen?
2. Wuxaan dhashay markii ay Soomaalidu qaxday.

### Grupp 4

Askartu waa ay gaardisay gram. agr.  
Askartu waa ay gaardiyeen. sem. agr.

Raggu muxuu sheegay maantay? gram. agr.  
Raggu maxay isu keeneen maantay? sem. agr.

Dhalinyaradu maxay soo kordhiyeen? semantical agr.  
Dhalinyaro ayaa billowday kacdoonka. gram. agr.

The head noun of the subject NP is once used as a collective noun while the other is used as a plural noun.

### Grupp 5

Här är båda verben i plural-form, men den första är reducerad plural, och den andra är ful plural-form.

1. **Gabdaha ayaa** Xamar **aaday**. detta är verbets reducerade **pluralform**
2. **Gabdhuu** dalxiis ayey Xamar u **aadeen**.

## Discussion: Masculine/feminine variation

Give examples of clauses where the same subject NP can be followed by a verb in both the masculine and the feminine form. Explain why, and state which verb form shows grammatical and which shows semantic agreement.

**Qofka** dumarka ahi waxa ay **toshay** dhar. intressant

### Grupp 3

~~Askartii baa cayaartay.~~ askar **-ta**

~~Askarigii waa cayaaray.~~ askari **-ga**

### Grupp 5

1. Ilmo ayaa caanaha cabbay. This shows grammatical agreement
2. Ilmuu caano ayey cabbaysaa. This shows semantic agreement. intressant

### Grupp 4

**Haween** baa cuntada **karisay** (en kvinna) ???

haweenku

(haweentu) haweeneydu

**Haween** ayaa cuntada **kariyay** (många kvinnor)

Dumarku waa uu masayraa.

Haweenku waa uu masayraa.

Haweenku cutada wuu kariyey.

Haweenku cutada way kariyeyen.

### 4.3.1 Important Terminology

#### Controller versus Target

The word or phrase that is the source of the agreement is called the controller, and the word that exhibits the agreement morpheme is called the target (Corbett).

#### Syntactic or Grammatical versus Semantic Agreement

When the grammatical form of the controller decides about the agreement, this is referred to as syntactic or grammatical agreement, as opposed to semantical agreement where the meaning of the controller decides about the agreement (Corbett).

#### Basic form versus singulative and plurative form

The traditional terms “singular” and “plural” sometimes lead to confusion when discussing agreement. Therefore Haspelmath (2017), among others, suggest other terms.

When referring to the form of a word, the basic form refers to a form where no suffix expressing number has been added.

basic form	singulative	plurative
<i>naag</i>		<i>naago</i>
<i>haween</i>	<i>haweeney</i>	
<i>dumar</i>		

#### Uniplex versus Multiplex Meaning

The terms uniplex and multiplex have been suggested by Haspelmath (2017) when referring to the meaning of a word-form.

uniplex	multiplex
<i>naag</i>	<i>naago</i>
<i>haweeney</i>	<i>haween</i>
	<i>dumar</i>

Basic forms that are multiplex are traditionally referred to as **collective nouns**, e.g. *haween* and *dumar*.

## Sex versus gender

Sex is biological and semantic: **male** and **female**.

Gender is grammatical: **masculine** and **feminine** (and in some languages also neutre etc.)

Female sex and masculine gender, e.g. *sac, xaas*.

Certain nouns with masculine gender can be used for both male and female human beings, e.g.

*Tani waa barahooda.* (Af-Soomaali 1, Hargeysa 2010: 102)

"Hoo" ayay tidhi **kalownkii intay siisay** Awoowe buufinkii. (Aktar 1996)

*Afhayeenka dumarka qurbajoogta Soomaaliyeed oo sheegtay...*

(<https://youtu.be/78kfhZ5RLvM>)

### 4.3.2 Numerals and measures as head of subject NP

With numerals there is variation between the plural form of verbs and the feminine singular.

Plural agreement

*Dugsiga waxa dhigta 350 arday.* (Xisaab 2, 1975)

*Dugsi ayaa waxa dhigta 415 wiil iyo 305 gabdhood.* (Xisaab 2, Hargeysa 2016)

*Dugsi baa waxa dhigta 642 arday.* (Xisaab 2 – 1994: 59)

*Afar carruur ah ayaa orday* 60 m. (student)

*Dugsi ayaa waxa ku jiray 396 wiil iyo 328 gabdhood.* (Xisaab 2, Hargeysa 2016)

*Immisa arday ayaa wiilal ahaa?* (Xisaab 2, Hargeysa 2016)

*Immisa wiil ayaa halkaas jooga?* (Af-Soomaali 1, Hargeysa 2010: 71)

Feminine singular agreement

*Beerta Cali waxaa ku taal 2174 geed.*

*Dabadeed hoos ka xarriiq saddex iyo tobant magac ee ku jirta.*

*Arday badan ayaa la prodday Cali.* (Af-Soomaali 1, Itoobiya 2006: 38)

*Immisa arday ayaa ku jirta dugsiga?* (Xisaab 2, Hargeysa 2016)

*Immisa arday ayaa dugsiga dhigata?* (Xisaab 2, Hargeysa 2016)

*Soddonkii gu' ayaa maanta Alan u buuxsantay.* (Dadqalkii)

*Immisa wiil ayaa imtixaankaa u fariisatay?* (Xisaab 2, Muqdisho 2018: 73)

### 4.3.3 Maxay and wax as subject NP

These pronominal words require plural agreement.

*Falkaab siyeed waxa weeye erayga caddaynaya sida ay wax u dhacaan ama u qabsamaan.*  
(Aasaaska Naxwaha 1973)

*Falkaab waxa la yiraahdaa erayada caddeeya sida wax u dhacaan ama u qabsoomaan.*  
(Aasaaska 1971:32)

*Wax waliba sidii uu filayey way kala qurxan yihin.* (Dadqalkii)

*Meerkori korkiisa waxba kuma noolaan karaan.* (Soomali 5, 1983: 86)

**Maxaa** aad u malaynaysa in ay ku **dhaceen** warrabihii markii uu godka ka soo baxay?  
(Af Soomali 4, 2001: 130)

*Maxaa aad u filaysaa in ay dhalada ku jiraan?* (ASF5'01:1)

*Maxaa uu Muuse u malaynaayey in ay ku dhaceen sacihii?* ASF5'01:99

*Dhar iyo baangad dhiig leh ayaa halkaas u yaal, meel ka sokeysana waxaa u taal boorso cagaaran oo ay walaxi ka buuxaan.* (Dadqalkii naxariista badnaa)

### 4.3.4 Focused postverbal subject

When the subject NP is focused and follows after the predicate, a feminine subject may be preceded by either a masculine or a feminine verb form. It seems that the masculine form might be agreeing with the particle waxa, which is originally a masculine noun.

*Dharkeeda waxa ka muuqda wasakh.* (Schoolbook)  
*Dharkeeda waxa ka muuqata wasakh.*

*Markii cabaar hadalkii Sureer iyo Saxarla isku celceliyenna  
waxa soo dhex galay Qorsho oo ku tidhi ...* (Saxarla)  
*waxa soo dhex gashay Qorsho oo ku tidhi ...*

## 4.4 Other types of agreement

### 4.4.1 Subject pronouns

A clitic subject pronouns occurs in most Somali clauses. Just like the predicate verb, the clitic subject pronoun agrees with the subject NP, and with certain nouns, variation can be observed in the use of subject pronouns, just like in the use of verb forms.

However, the clitic subject pronoun always agrees grammatically with the finite predicate verb.

*Waxa kale oo uu qoysku leeyahay aqal Soomaali iyo awr.*

*qol fadhi ah oo aad u wayn oo ay ku nastaan qoysku.*

#### 4.4.2 Possessives → new 5.2 (old 4.2)

When talking about family, it is common to find a semantic agreement between NP and possessive, as if including also other family members.

*Yaa dhisay Faarax aqalkooda? (Af-Soomaali 2, Muqdisho 2001: 59)*

*Cabdi qoyskooda (Af-Soomaali, Fasalka 1, Itoobiya 2006: 13)*

There is also variation in the possessive when referring to a numeral.

*Waxay Soomaaliya yimaaddeen saddex bilood horteed.*

*...sader wiig hortoodna waan joogay Ramadaantii... (Haatuf News 2007)*

Grammatical agreement in gender dominates for non-human antecedents.

*Waxaan tegey magaalo hargaha aad looga jecel yahay, dahabkanna waxaa la iga dhaafsatay **sacii** aad iga bireyseen **haraggiisii**.*

With a human antecedent, semantic agreement would be more likely.

#### Example

#### 4.4.3 Adjectives

##### Noun – modifier/determiner agreement

In many other languages, also adjectives, and sometimes numerals, agree with their head noun in gender and number. This is not the case in Somali.

<i>un piccolo ragazzo</i>	<i>wiil yar</i>
<i>una piccola ragazza</i>	<i>gabar yar</i>
<i>piccoli ragazzi</i>	<i>wiilal yaryar</i>
<i>piccole ragazze</i>	<i>gabdho yaryar</i>

Somali adjectives are used in two ways,

- as modifiers in noun phrases, and
- in verb phrases together with the verb *yahay*.

*baska weyn*

*basaska waaweyn*

*(Basku wuu) weyn yahay.*    *(Basaku way) waaweyn yihii.*

In both contexts, the adjective may take a reduplicated form to agree in number with the head noun or the subject noun phrase.

Somali adjectives may however agree in number with their head noun, but it does not seem to be an instance of grammatical agreement, but rather of semantic agreement.

It is important to notice that the agreement is not grammatical, but semantic. The reduplicated form of adjectives may occur with the singular form of certain nouns.

*dadka waaweyn rag waaweyn*

*gaadiid waaweyn*

*dhir jajaban sibidh jajaban*

*qof jajaban af Soomaali jajaban*

*caws dhaadheer hadal dhaadheer*

*dumar dhaadheer baasto dhaadheer*

The basic form of adjectives may occur with the plural form of certain other nouns.

*biyo yar saacado yar maamlo yar xoolo yar*

Finally an interesting combination of reduplicated adjective and singular verb.

*Carruurtoodu hadda way waawayn tahay.* (dr.dk 2013)

## Add:

Flytta Case till sentence constituents ??, Add stuff about number.

## 4. Terminology

English – Somali

Case, subject, object, nominative, accusative

Agreement, NP, verb, pronoun, gender, number

Focus, reduced verb forms

## 4. Additional reading

Kroeger 2005: Chapter 7, **Case and agreement**, pages 102–119, but you don't need to read § 7.1.3 (Split ergativity) and 7.2.2 (Ergative agreement systems).

Zholkovskij. 1979. Somali Syntax, Appendix 2. Morphological indicators of the subject, pp. 2787-278, and Appendix 3. Types of subject-predicate agreement, pp. 279-282.

+ Chapter 8: § 8.1–8.1.1 (p. 128-131)

For reference: Corbett 2022 talk and references therein

## 4. Old Exercises

5.1 Give one example each of clauses with the four different word orders: Subject Verb Object, SOV, OSV, OVS.

5.2 Give examples of clauses with the subject ending -u added to words in two different word classes.

5.3 Give examples of clauses with the subject ending -i added to words in four different word classes.

5.4 Give examples of clauses with the subject ending -aa added to two different types of verb forms.

5.5 Give examples of clauses where no subject ending can be added to the NP. Give examples with three different word classes at the end of the NP.

5.6 Give examples of clauses where the same subject NP can be followed by a verb in both the singular and the plural. Explain why, and state which verb form shows grammatical and which shows semantic agreement.

5.7 Give examples of clauses where the same subject NP can be followed by a verb in both the masculine and the feminine form. Explain why, and state which verb form shows grammatical and which shows semantic agreement.

5.8 Give two different examples of positive statement clauses without a short subject pronoun where the object is focused.

5.9 Give an example of a focused plural NP with a verb in the reduced plural form.

5.10 Give another example where two different reduced forms are possible with the same subject NP due to the variation between grammatical and semantic agreement.

# Discussion 2022

intressant

mina kommentarer

märkligt

5.1

Give one example each of clauses with the four different word orders: Subject Verb Object, SOV, OSV, OVS.

Grupp 3

SVO: **Ninku** waxa uu **qodayaa** ceel.

SOV: **Gabadhu hilib** baa ay **cunaysaa**.

OSV: **Hilib** baa ay **gabadhu cunaysaa**.

OVS: **Hilib** baa ay **cunaysaa gabadhu**.

Grupp 2

- Cali ayaa dilay maska SVO
- Cali ayaa maska dilay SOV
- Masko ayuu Cali dilay OSV
- Masko waxaa dilay Cali OVS

Grupp 5

1. Wiil baa dilay libaax. SVO
2. Gabar baa wiil dhashay SOV
3. Libaax baa wiil dilay. OSV
4. Libaaxa waxaa dilay wiil OVS

Grupp 4

Cabdul buug buu qorayaa - SOV

Buug ayuu Cabdul qorayaa - OSV

Buug ayuu qorayaa Cabdul - OVS

5.2

Give examples of clauses with the subject ending -u added to words in two different word classes.

### Grupp 3

Eygu wuu cararayaa. substantiv

Baabuurku wuu soconayaa. substantiv

### Grupp 2

- Anigu ma aqaan halkay gabadhu ka timid. Pronomen

### Grupp 5

1. Lo'du way ka didaa marada cas. substantiv
2. Baruhu waxaa uu wax baraa ardayda. substantiv

### Grupp 4

Gaarigu waa uu jabay substantiv

Wiilku ma hadlo substantiv

Ardaydu waa baaseen substantiv

### 5.3

Give examples of clauses with the subject ending -i added to words in four different word classes.

### Grupp 3

Shalay ayaa wiilali weerareen maxkamadda.

Maanta ayaa baabuuri isku dhacday jidka soddonka

Wii<sup>l</sup>ali uma dhalan **walaalkay.**

Walaalkay wiilali uma dhalan.

Wax wiilal ihi uma dhalan walaalkay.

1- Maanta ayaa ay **shinniyi** duushay. (Feminina substantiv i obestämd form)

2- **Eyga yari** wuu gaajoonayaa. (adjektiv)

3- **Kani** waa ardaygayga. (pronomen)

4- **Doorashada dastuuriga ahi** waa in ay wakhtigeeda ku dhacdaa. (vissa verbformer som sluter i en konsonant)

## Grupp 2

**Gabadhani** waxay sheegtay in ay bisadda **yari** raadinayso hooyadeed      subst, adj

**Kani** waa Faadumo walaalkeed.      pron

Magaca gaarka **ahi** waxa uu mar walba ka bilowdaa xaraf weyn.      verb

## Grupp 5

1. Habeen baa gabadhi god ka booday.      subst
2. Beri baa wiil yari mindi ku dilay libaax      adj
3. Taasi waa midda i daalisay.      pron
4. Sagaali waa guuleysatay.      subst

## Grupp 4

**Garaaig cadi** wuxuu ku jiraa dhiiqo      adjektiv

**Wiilka dheeri** wuxuu u ciyaaraa Göteborg      adjektiv

**Arayda fiicani** waxa ay ku baasaan imtixaanka.      adjektiv

## 5.4

Give examples of clauses with the subject ending -aa added to two different types of verb forms.

## Grupp 3

Isagaa ku labista surwaalka.      focus

Iyagaa la shaqeeya dad kala duwan.      focus

## Grupp 2

1. Odayaashu hablaha yar yar way guursadaan
2. Odayaasha hablaha yar yar guursada
3. Odayaasha hablaha yar yar guursadaa waa/way badan yihiin.      verb
4. Gabadhii oday guursataa iyadaa u madax banaan      verb

## Grupp 5

a. Subax walba **carruurtaa** waxay **cuntaa** laxoox iyo beer.  
Subax walba **carruurtaasi** waxay **cunaan** laxoox iyo beer.  
Subax walba **carruurtu** waxay **cunaan** laxoox iyo beer.

demonstrativ ändelse,  
laxoox iyo beer.

b. Maxkamadda **racfaankaa** waxay **xukuntay** dambiilayaal.

demonstrativ ändelse

#### Grupp 4

**Ninkii seexdaa** sicii dibi dhal.

**Ardaygii dadaalaa** wuxuu ku baasaa imtixaanka

**Macallinka xisaabta dhigaa** wuxuu seexdaa fiidkii.

#### 5.5

Give examples of clauses where no subject ending can be added to the NP. Give examples with three different word classes at the end of the NP.

#### Grupp 3

**Ahmed gaarigiisa** yaala magaalada waa **uu** xunyahay. -u

**Waxay** xaaqinkeeda ku fiiqday guriga.

#### Grupp 2

**Bulxan wuu** akhriyi waayay casharka. precis vad jag menade

1. **Nin baa lacag** xaday.
2. Ma **waxaa** beerta ku cartamay **Dameer weyn**.

#### Grupp 5

1. **Geel baa** durdurinaya.(NP)
2. Kaalay halkan seexo!(VP) imperativ, inget subjekt
3. **Casaan baa** muuqda.(AP)
4. Maalin dambe ha imaan!(AdP) nekad imperativ, inget subjekt

#### Grupp 4

maskulina		obestämda		substantiv,
verb		i		preteritum
adjektiv				-e
substantiv	har	ändelsen	-kii,	-tii
kan inte markera subjekt				

ninkii seexduu siciisu dibi dhalay

**Ninka seexday** waa uu khasaaray.

**Mindida** waxaa lagu jarjaraa khudaarta

**Boqorka** dhaga dameer ayuu leeyahay. ???

## 5.8

Give two different examples of positive statement clauses without a short subject pronoun where the object is focused.

1. Ninka ayaa waxaa dilay libaax.
2. Wiilka ayaa waxaa toosiyey hooyadiis.

## Grupp 2

1. Dugsiga waxaa dumiyay **Lugadheere**.
2. **Dugsiga baa** (uu) Lugadheere dumiyay.
3. **Caashaa** jalaato rabtaa.

## Grupp 5

1. Jaamacaddayada **macallimiin baa** berri imaanaysa.
2. Beerteena **shaqaale ayaa** beera.

## Grupp 4

**Odayga reerka** ayaa canjeerada **dubay**

**Canbuuladii** waxaa **cunaya** digaagga.

## 5.10

Give another example where two different reduced forms are possible with the same subject NP due to the variation between grammatical and semantic agreement.

## Grupp 3

1- **Ardaydu** macallimadda kama ay baqi **jirin**.

2- Sidee baa **ardaydu** macallimadda uga baqi **jirtay / jireen?** (maskulina ord för yrken som används om kvinnor)

**ardayda** ayaa ka baqi **jirtay** (f.sg.) / **jiray** (pl.) macallimadda

3- Xagge ayaa tamaandhada dhulkeenna **laga** beeran **jiray**.

4- Tamaandhada waddanku cagaar ayay ahaan **jirtay**. (Kollektiva substantiv) **mass**

## Grupp 2

Waxaa noo jooga marti intressant ?? márti / martí en eller flera gäster ???

Marti baa noo joogta

## Grupp 5

Duuliyaha diyaaradda oo baqaya ayaa ka duula garoonka Muqdisho.

The verb “baqaya” functions as a semantic agreement, while the verb “duula” functions as a grammatical agreement. ???

## Grupp 4

**Askartii** ayaa hubkooda **qaatay** intressant

**Askartii** ayaa hubkooda **qaadatay**.

## Questions

### Morgan Nilsson

I en skolbok som jag just läste finns dessa meningar.

*Carruurteennu waxa ay u kaalmeeyaan waalidkeenna.*

*Waxa ay kaalmeeyaan walaalaheenna waaweyn.*

*Maryan waxa ay kaalmaysaa hooyadeen.*

Finns det någon semantisk skillnad mellan 'u kaalmeeyaa' och bara 'kaalmeeyaa'?

### Sayid-Ahmed Jama

Nej det finns inte, men kanske lite mer betoning.

### Morgan Nilsson

I just noticed this noun phrase in a schoolbook and I'm a bit puzzled:

*kooxaha shaqada waaweyn ee reer miyiga*

*shaqada is the first modifier*

*waaweyn is the second modifier*

but there is no 'ee' between them.

Maybe it is because 'shaqada' is a complement, not a modifier?

### Sayid-Ahmed Jama

As you mentioned, maybe shaqada is a complement. However, it is normal to use.

*Cali Guriga weyn ee uu deggen yahay,  
kooxda buuraha dhaadheer korta,  
Fardaha saynta cas ee dheereeyaa*

### Morgan Nilsson

För dem av er som kan läsa på italienska rekommenderar jag

Puglielli, Annarita (ed.). 1981. *Sintassi della lingua somala*

På sidan 62 har hon exemplet

*Kani waa caano halaad.*

Är det ok?

Hur är det i så fall med

*Kani waa caano. Kani waa biyo.*

Och är *caano halaad* ett ord (*caanohalaadka*?) eller två (*caanaha halaad*?)

### Grupp 4      Onsdag

*Kani waa guri naagood. Det är ok.  
Tani waa sonkorta qasabeed*

Vi skulle rekommendera att skriva: *Tani waa sonkor qasabeed.*

*Kani waa caano halaad*

Vanlingen använder man *Kuwani waan caano geel.*

*Caanogeel* eller *caanaha geela* både kan man använda men *caanohalaadka* eller *caanaha halaad* är ovanliga.

*Kani waa guri ok  
Tani waa sonkorta  
Kani waa caano  
Kuwani waa caano.*

*\*Tani waa naagood*

*\*Tani waa qasabeed*

*\*Tani waa balaad*

## Unit 5

# The Internal Structure of Noun Phrases (< 4)

### 5.1 Subordination: Heads and dependents

In Somali noun phrases, the head noun (with its determiner suffixes) precedes the different kinds of dependents. The dependent is normally an adjective, a noun or a verb, or more precisely an adjective phrase, a noun phrase or a verb phrase.

<i>kubbadda yar,</i>	<i>kubbadda cagta,</i>	<i>kubbadda Maryan</i>			
head	dep.	head	dep.	head	dep.
<i>kubbaddaas [aad u weyn],</i>	<i>arday [isa salaamaysa]</i>				
head+det.	dep.	head	dep.		
<i>bisad [miis saaran],</i>	<i>darawal [gaari wada]</i>				
head	dep.	head	dep.		
<i>tuulo [ku taalla gobolkaas],</i>	<i>maamule [xafiiskiisii fadhiya]</i>				
head	dep.	head	dep.		
<i>aabbe [gabadhiisa yar dugsiga u wada]</i>					
head	dep.				

In English and Swedish, numerals are dependent words and the counted items are the syntactic head word.

<i>two</i>	<i>shoes</i>
dep.	head

Since in Somali the head noun precedes the dependents, the numeral must be the head and the counted items are dependents. This is also confirmed by the fact that:

- 1) a dependent noun after a numeral always takes the NUMERATIVE case form (or COUNTING FORM), thereby marking it morphologically as dependent,
- 2) determiner suffixes are added to the head noun, i.e. to the numeral.

<i>laba kabood</i>	<i>labadaas kabood</i>	<i>labadayda kabood</i>	
head	dep.	head	dep.

The only imaginable exceptions to the noun phrase "head first"-principle, are possessive or genitive constructions, which may be expressed in two ways, e.g.

<i>kubbadda Maryan</i>	<i>guriga Axmed</i>
<i>Maryan kubbadeeda</i>	<i>Axmed gurigiisa</i>

In the second alternative, the head is seemingly preceded by the modifier noun expressing the possessor, but it should be noted that at the same time, the head noun is followed by a possessive suffix which functions as an obligatory link between the head noun and the preceding possessor. This means that there is no immediate relation between the possessor noun and the following head noun. Rather, those constructions constitute two consecutive noun phases which are loosely associated through the possessive determiner suffix on the head noun.

<Maryan> <kubbadeedu> <waa> <weyn tahay>

is not very different from

<Maryan> <waxay> <rabtaa> <kubbadeeda weyn>

#### 4.1.1 Inalienable possession

Relations between two persons that can never be changed, or usually are not changed, are expressed in slightly different ways than other types of possession or relation.

Words like *hooyo*, *aabbe*, *walaal*, *eeddo*, *awoowe* take shorter possessive ending than other nouns.

*hooyaday* (\**hooyadayda*), *aabbahaa* (\**aabbahaaga*)

but *gabartayda*, *wiilkaaga*

They can not be followed by a modifier noun expressing the “owner”. Instead the word denoting the relative or friend must be followed by a possessive suffix that points back to the “owner” occurring before the head noun.

*Xasan hooyadiis* (\**hooyada Xasan*)

*Maryan aabbaheed* (\**aabbaha Maryan*)

but

*gabarta Xasan* = *Xasan gabartiisa*

*wiilka Maryan* = *Maryan wiilkeeda*

#### 4.1.2 Somali noun phrases with numerals

Noun phrases with numerals as their heads have a different structure. The numeral takes all the determiner endings, and the following noun (what is counted) cannot take any such endings. Instead it has to be in the COUNTING FORM (or the NUMERATIVE

form). Feminine nouns with the plural ending *-o* has a special counting form ending in *-ood*. All other nouns use the singular form as their counting form.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	NUMERATIVE
FEM.	<i>bil, bisha</i>	<i>bilo</i>	<i>shan bilood</i>
	<i>hooyo, hooyada</i>	<i>hooyooyin</i>	<i>shan hooyo</i>
MASC.	<i>aabbe, aabbaha</i>	<i>aabbayaal</i>	<i>shan aabbe</i>
	<i>bas, baska</i>	<i>basas</i>	<i>shan bas</i>
	<i>albaab, albaabka</i>	<i>albaabbo</i>	<i>shan albaab</i>

## 5.2 Determiners

English and Swedish have determiner words, which generally have less of lexical meaning and more of grammatical function, e.g. *this, that, my, your, all, some* etc.

In Somali, moste determiners are suffixes, which are added to the head noun.

*guriga, gurigan, gurigaas, gurigii, gurigayga, gurigaaga, gurigee...*  
*baska, baskii, baskan, baskooda...*

There are also a few determiner particles that precede the head noun and a few that follow the head noun, e.g. *isla, uun...*

*isla magaalada,*

Some determiner particles have developed from a small realtive clauses, e.g. *oo keliya, oo dhan...*

Determiners are not so important to discuss in Somali, since they are endings that are added to the nouns (definite, demonstrative and possessive suffixes). (In English and Swedish, their role in word order is a much more complex issue since determiners are independent words.)

## 5.3 Noun Modifiers

**Modifiers** (or **adjuncts**) are additional words that can be **added freely** to any head noun, just like adjuncts can be added freely to any verb.

Modifiers are made up of nouns, adjectives or subclauses with a verb. Somali does not have any preposition phrases (prepositions belong to verb phrases). Therefore there are no such complements or adjuncts in Somali.

### 4.3.1 Nouns as modifiers

#### Juxtaposition – Nouns as Complements and Adjuncts

When a noun is added as an adjunct or complement after a head noun, there is usually no morphological suffix to mark this relation.

When two nouns are simply placed together in a phrase, they are said to be in **juxtaposition** with each other.

Juxtaposition is often used to express possession or association between two nouns. In this kind of construction the head noun does not have any special requirements on the other noun, which is then an adjunct.

*qoyska Xasan, kubbadda cagta*

In Somali possession can usually be expressed through simple juxtaposition of the possessed object and the possessor.

*guriga Sahro*

It can also be expressed through the use of a possessive suffix doubling and referring back to the possessor noun. In linguistics this is referred to as possessor agreement.

*Sahro gurigeeda*

*aniga walaalkay*

*Dege walaalkiis*

Some words, above all those representing close relatives, do not allow the juxtaposition construction, but only the use of the possessive suffixes (in their short form).

The first noun may have modifiers:

*Waxaan tegey magaalo hargaha aad looga jecel yahay, dahabkanna waxaa la iga dhaafсадай **sacii** aad iga bireyseen **haraggiisii**.*

### 4.3.2 Adjectives as modifiers

*gaari cusub,*

An adjective may be preceded by an intensifier which is then part of an adjective phrase, e.g. *aad u fiican* 'very nice'.

*baaskiil aad u fiican*

### 4.3.3 Noun phrases as modifiers

*baaskiil [qurux badan],*

*nin [da' weyn]*

*qofka [ugu timo dheer adduunka]*

A noun phrase may precede a numeral and modify the amount, but this is not a immediate part of the NP with the numeral. It is a looser kind of association.

*[Qiyaas ahaan] laba [boqol oo malyuun oo dad ah oo ku nool adduunka]*

Yet another type of noun phrase modifier are those that define a percentual relation. They too are more loosely associated with the NP containing the numeral. This kind of modifier may enter into the middle of the numeral phrase.

*50 mg kiiladii (Dheef iyo dhereg)*

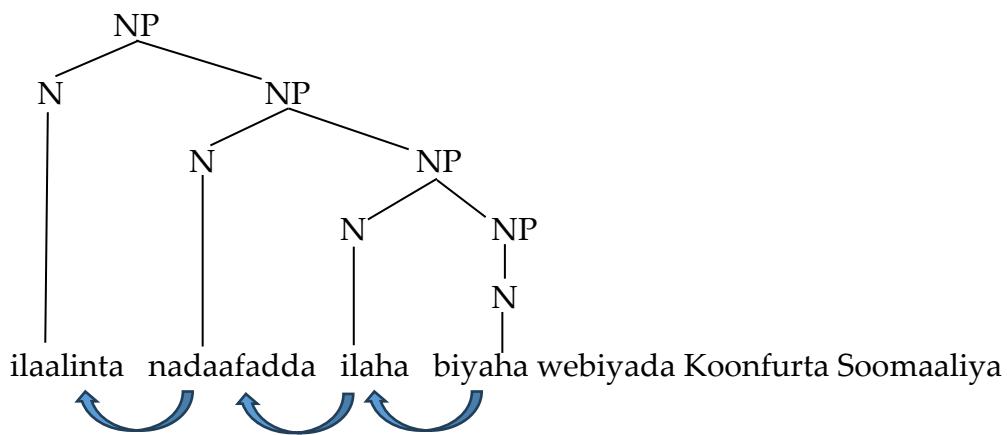
*kiiladii 50 mg ??*

### 4.3.4 Recursion

Recursion is a phenomenon in syntax that means that a rule may be repeated indefinitely. This happens if the same element occurs on both sides of the arrow.

$\text{NP} \rightarrow \text{N}(\text{NP})$

A noun phrase may consist of a noun followed by another noun phrase, which in turn may consist of a noun followed by another noun phrase etc.



### 4.3.5 Subclauses as modifiers

Verbs as modifiers constitute relative subclauses.

*baaskiil [buluug ah]*

*muddo [aan dheerayn] (< \*dheer-ahayn)*  
*raggii [dagaal tegey] oo [harraadan] oo [gaajoonaya]*

#### 4.3.5 The lack of preposition phrases as modifiers

1a. a student [with long hair] =

*arday [timo dheer]*

In the English sentence the NP has a prepositional phrase (*with long hair*) as an adjunct while Somali has no prepositional phrase but another noun as a defining adjunct.

1a.

*a student [with long hair]*

It has an adjektiv and PP modifier.

The somali sentence does not need a conjuction/preposition (with)

In somali there is an adjunkt as modifier but no PP modifier.

It seems that English and Somali translation is same grammatical structure but Somali translation does not need conjunction (with).

*arday [timo dheer]*

2a.

*a student [of physics]*

PP (*of Physics*) in the English sentence, Somali sentence needs a verb (*dhigta, barta*) in order build a subclause that can serve as a modifier of the head noun.

*arday fiisigis dhigta*  
*ardey fisikis barta*  
*arday [fiisigis dhigta]*

but in the defininte form a simple juxtaposition of nouns is also possible

?\*Ardaya fiisigiska men macallinka fisigiska  
Ardaya fiisigiska dhigta

There is difference from English to Somali translation. Somali translation takes definite article both subject NP and complement PP (of physics) becomes arday+**ga** and fiisigis+**ka**.

3a.

*a student [of physics] [with long hair]*

The English sentence contains both a complement PP and an adjunct PP. Somali sentence contains indefinite noun + adjunct + verb + oo + adjunct.

In English, the complement PP [of physics] must precede the adjunct PP [with long hair].

What about the word order in Somali?

arday fisigis dhigta oo tima dhaadheer  
ardey timo dheer **oo** fisikis barta  
arday fisigis dhigta oo timo dheer

ardayga fisigiska **ee** timaha dheer  
ardayga timaha dheer ee fisigiska ????????

4b.

*a student [from Philadelphia] [with long hair]*

English sentence has NP + complement PP + adjunct PP, the difference is that Somali sentence has extra verb (*ah*) and missing PP.

The Somali translation requires a conjunction between the two dependents.

Arday **Filadelfiyaan ah** oo tima dhaadheer.  
Arday **ka** yimid Philadelphia oo timo dheer  
Arday **ka** yimid Philadelphia **ee** timo dheer.  
Arday **ka** yimid Philadelphia **oo** **timaha** dheer.  
Arday **ka** yimid Philadelphia **oo** timo dheer **leh**.  
Arday **ka** yimid Philadelphia **ee** timo dheer **leh**.

## 5.4 Noun complements

In previous courses we have not made any distinction between noun modifiers and noun complements. We have just talked about modifiers (Sw. attribut, So. faahfaahiyayaasha) that can be added to nouns in order to create more complex noun phrases. In linguistics it is however common practice to make a distinction between modifiers and complements.

**Complements** are strictly chosen by the head noun itself, in similar ways as verbs choose their complements. Therefore complements mainly occur together with verbal nouns, e.g. *baritaanka, akhriska...*

Differently from modifiers, complements are always made up of other nouns or noun phrases, but not adjectives or subclauses. This is similar to verb complements, which are also made up of nouns or noun phrases.

Adjectives and subclauses as Complements are not common in Somali.

When the second noun in a juxtaposition fills a grammatical relation similar to that of the subject or object of a verb, such nouns are generally considered to be complements.

But it is sometimes difficult to draw the each line between modifiers and complements, e.g.

*baarlamaanka Soomaaliya, madaxweynaha dalkaas*

Juxtaposition can also serve to express the agent or the patient/theme of the action that is expressed by the head noun. In this kind of construction the head noun has special requirements on the other noun, which is then a complement.

<i>maamulaha dugsiga</i>	( <i>waxa uu maamulaa dugsiga</i> )
theme	agent
complement	theme

The school can be said to be the theme both in relation to the verb *maamulaa* and to the noun *maamule*.

In the following example the complement noun has the semantic role of the agent.

<i>qosolka ardayda iyo macallinka</i>	( <i>ardayda iyo macallinku waa ay qoslayaan</i> )
agent	agent/subj
complement	

*baahida korontada* ‘the need for electricity’ – the electricity would be the grammatical object and semantic theme of a verb that would correspond to the noun *baahida*.

*baahida ciidanka* ‘the army’s needs’ – the army would be the subject/experiencer of a verb that would correspond to the noun *baahida*.

#### 4.4.1 Agentive complements

Agentive complements (often called subject)

#### 4.4.2 Theme or patient complements

#### 4.4.3 Beneficiary or recipient complements

### 5.5 Coordination

It is possible for a phrase to contain more than one head word as well as more than one modifier

#### 4.5.1 Multiple heads

Two or more head words can be added together by the conjunction *iyo*.

*macallimiinta, maamulaha iyo ardayda dugsiga*  
head   modifier

*bare iyo arday ka sheekaynaya casharka*  
head   modifier

Alternative head words are joined by the conjunction *ama*.

*macallimiinta, maamulaha ama ardayda dugsiga*  
head   modifier

#### 4.5.2 Multiple modifiers

In Somali, a noun can only be immediately followed by **one** modifier or complement. When there is a need to add more than one dependent, a conjunction must be used before the second, third etc. dependent. That conjunction is either *oo* or *ee*. The choice between *oo* and *ee* is a complicated issue that has been discussed by several scholars.

Mansur & Puglielli. 1999. *Barashada naxwaha af Soomaaliga*. Pp. 192–202, 225-228.

Saeed. 1993. Pp. 246–253.

**Indefinite head noun + modifier + *oo* + modifier (+ *oo* + modifier)**

*laba arday oo sheekaysanaya*

(Warmooge waxa uu ahaa) **nin** xun **oo** naxariis daran **oo** dadku neceb yihii.

Defininte head noun + modifier + ee + modifier (?? + ee + modifier)

(Can there ever be more than one ee + modifier?)

...**ninka** waallan **ee** xukuma dalka Eriteriya...

Waxayna la kulmeen Guddoomiyaha Baarlamaanka dalkaa oo ah **ninka** 2aad **ee** dalka Iswiidhan...

weeraha fudud **ee** soo socda

meesha godan **ee** [badda Hindiya].

cirifka fog **ee** [Waqooyi].

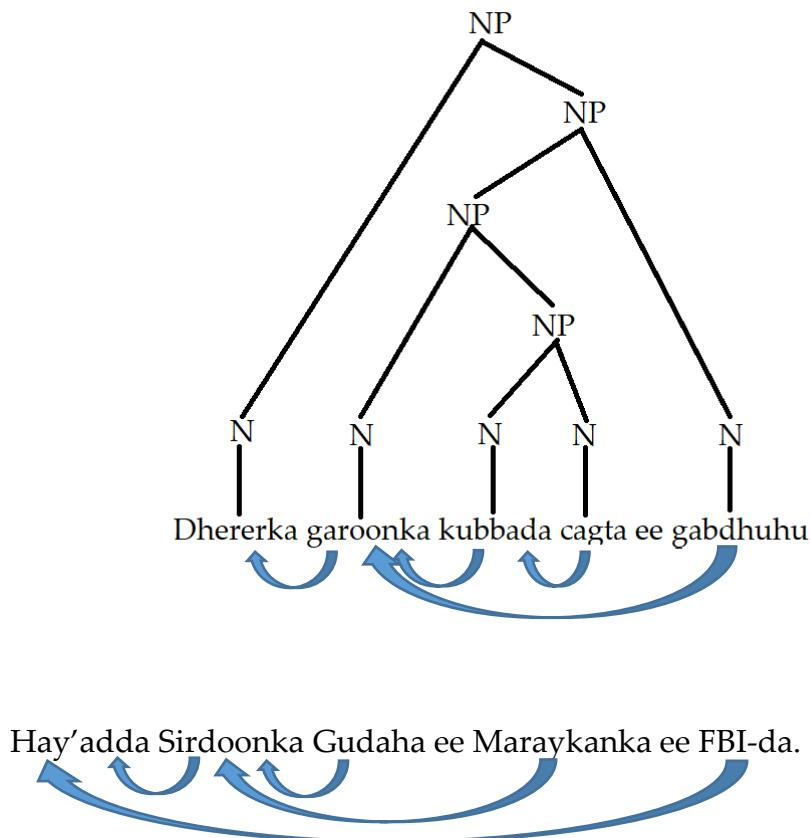
Buuraraha Golis waxay ku yaalliin **xeebta** Badda Cas ee [Waqooyiga Soomaaliya].

A summary of these rules is given in the following table.

If the head noun is	a definite noun, e.g. <i>ninka</i>	a proper name, e.g. <i>Cali</i>	an indefinite noun, e.g. <i>nin</i>
the adjunct describes the noun	use <b>oo</b> before every adjunct	use <b>oo</b> before every adjunct	
the adjunct defines the noun	add first adjunct directly to the noun and use <b>ee</b> before subsequent adjuncts		add first adjunct directly to the noun and use <b>oo</b> before subsequent adjuncts

A very basic principle is that every modifier or complement has to point to the immediately preceding noun. In order to point to another noun, further away, one of the conjunctions **oo** or **ee** has to be added, e.g.

*Dhererka garoonka kubbada cagta ee gabdhuhu waa 79.25 m.*



#### 4.5.3 Parenthetical modifiers

In certain contexts, the conjunction *oo* must also be used before the first modifier.

With definite nouns it is important to distinguish between two different kinds of adjuncts. Descriptive adjuncts only give some additional information about a person or object that we have already identified and know who or what it is. A defining adjunct, on the other hand gives additional information about a still not identified person or object, and it exactly this additional information that helps us identify the person or object referred to by the head noun.

In certain contexts, the conjunction *oo* is used without its usual function of coordinating two modifiers. Instead it expresses subordination of a parenthetical modifier to a definite or proper noun (name) that is already known to the listener/reader. Parenthetical modifiers only give additional information about a person or object that we have already identified and know who or what it is.

Often, but not always, the information expressed by the modifier has limited validity. It only applies at a specific moment in time, and the situation may very well change, and the information may not be valid any more.

Proper name + <i>oo</i> + modifier
Long personal pronoun + <i>oo</i> + modifier

Proper nouns, i.e. names, always have to be followed by the conjunction *oo* before any kind of modifier. The modifier almost always expresses some temporally limited information. The same applies to the long personal pronouns.

*Waxaan arkay Cali oo kubbad ciyaaraya.*

Ali was playing football when I saw him, but it's absolutely possible (and also quite probable) that he is not doing that any longer.

*Carruurtii iyaga oo faraxsan ayaa waxa ay cuneen cuntadii.*

*Faadumo oo shakisan ayaa tiri, "Maya eeddo..."*

The same kind of modifier is sometimes used after a definite noun. The purpose is again to express that the information is not relevant in order to identify the object or person, it's merely parenthetical, or the validity is limited in time.

Defininte noun + *oo* + parenthetical descriptive modifier

*Maamulka dalka Iswiidhan ayaa xiray nin ay aaminsan yihiin inuu ka dambeeyay weerarkii gaariga loo adeegsaday ee shalay ka dhacay Stockholm. Dacwad oogayaasha waxay sheegayaan in ninkaasi looga shakiyay in uu argagixiso xiriir la leeyahay. Warbaahinta dalka Iswiidhan waxay sheegayaan in ninka oo 39 sano jir ah uu ka soo jeedo Usbekistaan.*

The underlined modifier constitutes additional – interesting, but not crucial – information that has been added, almost like in parentheses.

*Reerkii oo naxsan ayaa sheekhii toosiyay si uu hilbaha u cuno.*

The underlined modifier adds information whose validity is restricted to a certain moment in time.

#### 4.5.4 Multiple NPs as modifiers

Two NPs of equal status that function as modifiers are joined by the conjunction *iyo*.

*Wasaaradda [[Waxbarashada]] iyo [Tacliinta Sare]]*  
head            modifier

If they are not of equal status, then *oo* or *ee* is used.

*[wasaaradda [waxbarashada]] ee Soomaaliya*  
head (dep.)            dep.

In the last example *Soomaaliya* is a dependent of the whole phrase *wasaaradda waxbarashada*, i.e. that whole phrase is the head of *Soomaaliya*.

### 4.5.3 Multiple complements

Very often a noun phrase with a verbal noun as its head has a similar structure as a clause with a corresponding predicate verb instead of the verbal noun.

<i>isku-xiridda</i> [qoryaha] [musmaar la'aan]
head            compl.    compl.
theme      tool

Here the two dependents are not connected with any conjunction.

## 5.6 Apposition

Sometimes two nouns are used together. One noun gives additional information about the other, and it is not very clear whether they should be considered head and dependent. Instead, such pairs of nouns are considered to be in apposition to each other, e.g.

*hooyaday Maryan*  
*saaxiibaddeed Faadumo*  
*mudane wasiir*  
*madaxweynaha Farmaajo*

When the second part is longer, it is often preceded and followed by short pauses in speech, and it is then suitable to mark those pauses with commas in writing.

Add Example

## Phrase structure

Verbradning pga bisats

Muxubo oo ordaysa <> ayaa <> markiiba <> qolkii Samaan **seexan jirey** <> **gashay**.

Soomaalida iyo gumaysiga kadib

Two nouns cannot be connected through a preposition, therefore *The Somali people after the colonial era* is expressed through coordination.

## 5.7 Demonstrative pronouns as head words

QUESTION What about modifiers after a demonstrative pronoun as head word.

Kii oo [xanaaqsan] ayaa noo yimid.

Tii oo [faraxsan] ayaa na soo gashay.

## Add:

mass nouns, measure words, itemizers (xabbo), se Kroeger § 8.1.2

## 5. Terminology

English – Somali

## 5. Additional reading

Kroeger 2005 : Chapter 6, pages 87–98.

## 5. Old Exercises

4.1. xxx

4.2 Give three examples of a noun phrase containing a complement that would be the subject of the corresponding verb, such as *qosolka ardayda*, *baahida ciidanka*. Also write the sentence with the verb. **Förtydliga instruktionerna!!**

4.3 Give three other examples of a noun phrase containing a complement that would be the object of the corresponding verb, such as *maamulaha dugsiga*, *baahida korontada*. Also write the sentence with the verb. **Förtydliga instruktionerna!!**

4.4 Give three examples of juxtapositions that can also be expressed with the adjunct preceding the head noun, which is followed by a possessive determiner suffix. Underline the head noun, e.g. baabuurka Xasan, Xasan baabuur-kiisa. At least one example should not express possession.

4.5 Give three examples of noun phrases where a juxtaposition is not possible, and the only possible construction is that the adjunct precedes the head noun, which is followed by a possessive determiner suffix. Only one or two of the examples should express possession, the other ones should express some other kind of meaning.

4.6 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Proper name + oo + adjunct (+ oo + adjunct)

4.7 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Indefinite noun + adjunct + oo + adjunct (+ oo + adjunct)

4.8 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Defininte noun + oo + descriptiv adjunc (+ oo + descriptiv adjunc)

4.9 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Definite noun + defining adjunct (+ ee + defining adjunct)

4.10 Can you think of any exceptions to the four rules about the use of oo and ee?

intressant

mina kommentarer

märkligt

## Discussion 2022

5a

What branch of Physics are you a student of?

English question is formed by a complement PP and even Somali sentence is the same.

Somali translation takes preposition (**ka**) and question word of (**ee**)

Qaybtee ka dhigataa fisikiska

Waa tee qaybta fiisigiska ee aad ardayga ka tahay?

Fiisigiska qaybtee ayaad dhigataa?

Laantee fiisigiska ayaad arday **ka** tahay?

Qaybtee fiisigiska ayaad arday **ka** tahay?

6a

The [student] with short hair is dating the one with long hair

The pro-form (*one*) can be used to refer to the head noun (*student*) in English as well as in Somali.

Somali language lacks head noun **one** instead uses **tan** which is gender word (**tan**) instead of one. The one → tan both are sameness also with definiteness, (**midka**)/(**midda**).

Ardayga timaha yar wuxu la sosdaa **mida** timaha dheer.

Ardayga timaha gaabani waxa uu la haasaawayaa midka timaha dheer.

Ardayga timaha gaabani wuxuu shukaansadaa midda timaha dheer.

Ardayga timaha gaaban, wuxuu shukaansanaya **tan** timaha dheer.

*Ardayada timaha gaaban, waxay shukaansanaysaa **kan** timaha dheer*

7a

a student [of Physics]

arday [barta fiisigis]

arday fiisigis dhigta

arday [fiisigis dhigta]

but definite form:

Ardayga fiisigiska

7a'

John studies Physic

Somali translation needs particle (waxa) and pronoun (**uu**) which refers back to subject John.

John wuxuu bartaa fiisigiska

John waxa uu dhigtaa fiisigis.

John waxa uu dhigtaa fiisigis.

John waxa uu bartaa fiisigis.

7b

the loss [of his passport]

Somali translation is odd but grammatically correct.

Nearly the two languages are same except possessive in Somali is suffixed with passport.

lumidda [baasaboorkiisa]

lumista [baasaboorkiisa]

7b',

John lost his passport

Somali translation takes particle focus marker (**waxa**) and preposition (**ka**).

John **wuxuu** lumiyay baasaboor**kiisa**

John waxa uu lumiyay baasaboorkiisa.

John waxaa ka lumay baasaboorkiisii.

John **waxa ka** lumay baasaboorkiisa.

7c

the attack [on Pearl Harbor]

Somali translation lacks preposition on but instead is replaced with (**ii**).

Weerark**ii** Pearl Harbor

weerarkii dakadda Pearl

Weerarkii Pearl Harbor

Weerarkii Pearl Harbor.

7c'

the Japanese attacked Pearl Harbor]

PP complements of a noun can often be paraphrased as NP arguments.

Somali translation takes particle **waxa** and preposition **ku**.

Jabaanees**ka ayaa** weeraray Pearl Harbor

Jabbaanku waxa ay weerareen dakadda Pearl.

Jabaanaysku waxay weerareen Pearl Harbor.

Jabbaanku waxay **ku** duuleen P.H.

*Jabbaanku waxay weerareen Pearl Harbor.*

8a

the woman [that I love]

Somali translation takes relative pronoun (taas+oo = taasoo) which is equivalent English relative pronoun **that**.

naagta [aan jeclahay]

Haweenayda aan jeclahay.

Gabadha aan jeclahay.

Haweeneyda taas**oo** aan jeclahay.

*Haweynada aan jeclahay.*

*Haweynaydaas aan jeclahay.*

8b

the food [that I love]

cuntada [aan jeclahay]

Cuntada aan jeclahay.

Cuntada aan jeclahay.

Cunnada taasoo aan jeclahay.

*Cuntada aan jeclahay.*

*Cunnadaas aan jeclahay.*

8c

the color [that I love]

The clause in these sentences works as a modifier within the NP which is known as (*relative clause*)

midabka [aan jeclahay]

Midabka aan jeclahay.

Midabka aan jeclahay.

Midabka kaasoo aan ka helo.

*Midabka aan jeclahay.*

*Midabkaas aan jeclahay*

10a

that little dog under the table

Adjective modifiers in English normally occur before the head noun while it comes after the head noun in Somali.

Somali translation took conjunction (**ee**)

Eygaas yar oo miiska hoostiisa **ku jira**.

Eygaas yar ee miiska hoostiisa ku jira.

Eygaas yar ee miiska ku hoos jira.

Eygaas yar **ee** miiska hoostiisa jooga.

11a

You have [a very beautiful daughter].

An adjective modifiers can themselves be modified by adverbs of degree sometimes called (*intensifiers*) in both languages.

Somali takes both intensifier and particle waxa, Somali intensifier is (**aad**).

Waxaad leedahay gabar aad u qurux badan.

Waxa aad leedahay gabar aad u qurxoon.

Waxaad haysataa gabadh aad u qurux badan.

Waxa aad leedahay gabar aad u quruxoon.

14a

You have a [beautiful, intelligent, considerate] daughter.

Waxaad leedahay gabadh qurux, caqli iyo tixgelin leh.

Waxa aad leedahay gabar qurxoon, caqli badan oo tixgalin leh.

Waxaad haysataa gabadh qurux badan, caqli badan oo tixgelin badan.

Waxaad leedahay gabar aad u qurxoon, waxgarada, **oo** tixgelin leh.

Waxaad dhashay gabar aad **u** qurux badan waxgarada, **oo** tixgelin leh.

Somali translation takes preposition (**u**) and conjunction (**oo**) where there is not available in English version.

16

You have a [[very beautiful]AP but [slightly crazy] AP]AP daughter.

**Gabar aad u qurux badan laakiin yara waalan/fudud ayaad dhashay.**

waxa aad leedahay gabar aad u qurxoon laakiin yara fudud.

Waxaad haysataa gabadh aad u qurux badan balse yara fudud.

**Waxa** aad leedahay gabar aad u qurxoon, laakiin yara fudud.

There is no difference except Somali takes particle **waxa**.

28c

[John's sister's husband]'s uncle

**John walaashiis ninkeeda adeerkii.**

John walaashii saygeeda, adeerkii.

John walaashiis ninkeeda adeerkii.

There is a sameness both Somali and English except Somali does not take apostrophe but it takes genitive pronoun.

[John's sister's husband's uncle]'s daughter (etc.)

**Gabadha uu dhalay adeerka John seeddigiis.**

29d

[my favorite uncle's youngest daughter's oldest son's best friend]'s new bicycle.

Somaliska behöver inte följa engelska struktur när det gäller posasiv substantiva fraser.

Baaskiilka cusub ee saaxiibka qaaliga ee wiilkeeda ugu wayn ina abtiday **aan jeclahay**.

**Adeerkayga aan ugu jeclahay gabadhiisa ugu yar wiilkeeda ugu wayn saxaabkiisa ugu fiican baaskiisa cusub.**

**Adeerkayga aan jecelahay inantiisa ugu yar wiilkeeda ugu weyn saaxiibkiisa ugu fiican baaskiilkiisa cusub.**

Abtigay aan jeclahay gabadhiisa ugu yar wiilkeeda ugu weyn saaxiibkiisa wanaagsan baaskiilkiisa cusub. Somali takes **aan** as subject.

4.2

4.2 Give three examples of a noun phrase containing a complement that would be the subject of the corresponding verb, such as *qosolka ardayda*, (*baahida ciidanka*). Also write the sentence with the verb.

*qosolka ardayda Aradaydu way qoslayaan*

*Ciidanku waxa uu u baahan yahay alaabta*

**Qalbiga qofku** Qofku waxa uu

### Grupp 3

**Isla weynida dadku** dhibaato weyn bay keentaa.

**Qalbiga qofku** wuxuu hagaa falkiisa.

**Isfaham la'aantu** waxay keentaa dagaal.

### Grupp 2

- |                              |                |                             |
|------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <b>Qabowga waqooyiga.</b> | <b>source?</b> | Waqooyigu wuu qabowyahay.   |
| 2. <b>Geerida boqoradda.</b> |                | Boqoraddu way geeriyyootay. |
| 3. <b>Oohinta yaxaaska.</b>  |                | Yaxaasku wuu ooyay.         |

### Grupp 4

Ilaha biyaha association: innehåll, ämne, material

Ilaha biyuhu **ka** yimaadaan.

Asalka warka

Asalka warka **laga** helay.

Dhibaatada cudurka **subject?association?**

Dhibaatada cudurka laga dhaxlo waa ay daran tahay

### Grupp 5

Aniga iyo adigu waa aan shaqaynaynaa.

**Shanqarta ardayda** waa aan maqlayey.

Booliska iyo tuuggu waa ay is eryanayaan.

**Cunidda miraha** waa fican yihiin. **object** Wiilku waxa uu **cunayaa miraha**

Hooyada iyo gabadhu way baxeen.

**Guuxa baabuurka** ayaan ka baqay.

#### 4.3

4.3 Give three other examples of a noun phrase containing a complement that would be the **object** of the corresponding verb, such as *maamulaha dugsiga*, *baahida korontada*. Also write the sentence with the verb.

#### Grupp 3

cayaartoyda magaalada. association (place)  
madaxweynaha wadanka. association tillhörigitet (place)  
3-Sanadkan waxa dhacday abaar baahsan.

#### Grupp 2

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Seexinta carruurta. | Waa uu seexiyay carruurtii |
| 2. Waraabinta xoolaha. | Wuu waraabiyyay xoolihii.  |
| 3. Akhrinta casharka.  | Wuxuu akhriyyay casharka.  |

#### Grupp 4

- Taliyaha ciidanka association

Madaxweynuhu waxa uu dallacsiiyay taliyaha ciidanka.

- Kulka qorraxda place, origin

Dhirtu waxa ay celisaa kulka qorraxda.

- Yaraanka reerka ??? tillhörighet, association

Waalidku waxa ay jecelyhiin yaraanka reerka.

#### Grupp 5

Dhakhtarka cusbitaalku wuxuu daaweynayaa dadka buka. Association, tillhörighet, plats

Askariga dalku wuxuu ilaaliyaa amniga waddanka.

Baraha dugsigu wuxuu qoraa buugaag.

#### 4.4

4.4 Give three examples of **juxtapositions** that can **also be expressed with the adjunct preceding the head noun**, which is followed by a possessive determiner suffix. Underline the head noun,

e.g. baabuurka Xasan, Xasan baabuur-kiisa. At least one example should not express possession.

### Grupp 3

- Gabadha Cali, Cali gabadh-dhiisa
- Madaxda Xisbiga, Xisbiga madax-**diisa**
- **Madaxweynaha waddanka**, waddanka madaxweyni-hiisa

### Grupp 2

1. Seynta faraska. Faraska seyn-tiisa
2. Qiiqa dabka. källa, source Dabka qiiq-iisa
3. Nalka guriga. Guriga nal-kiisa

### Grupp 4

Ururuka dhallinyarada innehållet / "ägare" dhallinyarada urur-kooda.  
Wiilka boqorka tillhörighet boqorka wiil-kiisa

Wasiirka arrimaha gudaha 'beskrivning av typ av minster'

dharka dugsiga dugsiga dharkiisa

### Grupp 5

Mulkiilaha dukaanku (waxa uu qataa lacag badan) **juxtaposition ??**  
Aabbaha reerku (waxaa u shaqeeyaa qoyska).  
Bukaanka lugtiisu (waxaa ay u baahan tahay daaweyn)

## 4.5

4.5 Give three examples of noun phrases where a juxtaposition is **not** possible, and the only possible construction is that the **adjunct precedes the head noun, which is followed by a possessive determiner suffix**. Only one or two of the examples should express possession, the other ones should express some other kind of meaning.

### Grupp 3

hooyo Maryan

hooyada Maryan      Maryans mamma      Maryan hooyadeed

Information packaging

baabuurka Maryan      Maryan baaburkeeda

Wasiirka Arrimaha Dibadda      Kubbadda Cagta      \*Cagta kubbadeeda

Lamaanaha			sanadka
Cayaaryahankii			Malmö.
Qurbajoogta Aqoonyahankeeda			

### Grupp 2

Maamulaha jaamacadda	object?	association?	place?
Maareeyaha garoonka	qofka	maamulaya	jaamacadda
Duuliyaha diyaaradda	qofka	maaraynaya	garoonka
	qofka duulinaya	diyaaradda	

### Grupp 5

hooyo hooyadeed      mammas mamma      saaxiibka saaxiibkiis

ninka naagiisa = \*naagta ninka

naagta ninkeeda

Waxaan la kulmay **wiilasha aabbohood** = **aabbaha wiilasha** = pojkarnas pappa  
aabbaha wiilashiisa = pappans pojkar

Taabo **wiilasha lugahooda** = **lugaha wiilasha**

Hoyadoood baa timid shalay      no adjunct, only a suffix

Hooyadiis buu jecelyahay

Ayeeyadiis ma nooshahay weli?

wiilasha Abbahood ayaan la kulmay. (denna ordfoljd är nödvändig för släktskapsord)

Macallinka wiilasha ayaan la kulmay.

Aabbaha ilmaha ayaan ahay. bryter mot traditionella regler enligt grammatikböckerna

Hooyada carruurta....

#### 4.6

4.6 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Proper name + *oo* + adjunct (+ *oo* + adjunct)

#### Grupp 3

Waxaa jooga **Xasan oo** casharka dhagaysanaya.

Waxaanu dhagaysanay **Caasha oo** muxaadaro jeedinaysa.

Waxay maqleen **Cumar oo** marqaati noqonaya.

#### Grupp 2

Waa Guuleed oo buur fuulaya.

Waxaan sugayay Cali oo soo daahay saaka.

Maanta horteed ma arag Raage oo geed **hooskiis** harsanaya.

#### Grupp 4

Canab oo gaari wadda ayaan timid.

Waxa aan salaamay Hinda oo telefoon ku hadlaysa.

Cabbdul waxa uu booqday Maxammed oo guriga jooga.

#### Grupp 5

Maxamed **oo** nastay seexdayna saaka aroortii.

Cabdiraxmaan **oo** ah wiil maariin qurxoonna.

Gabar yar **oo** ordaysa baan saakay arkay.

#### 4.7

4.7 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Indefinite noun + adjunct + *oo* + adjunct (+ *oo* + adjunct)

#### Grupp 3

Bas rakaab ah oo u socda Boorama ayaa jabay.

Cali maanta wuu bukaa oo xumad ayaa haysa.

Nin barandada fadhiya oo fakiraya ayaa maqlay shanqar .

#### Grupp 2

Fooley waa nin dheer oo muran badan.

Ceebla waxa ay ahayd gabar aamusan oo edeb badan

Geedseexde waa oday weyn oo xooggan.

#### Grupp 4

Waxaa i qaniinay eey cad oo qaylo badan.

Libaax cawlan oo xoogan ayaa neef buuran oo irmaan naga cunay.

Waxa uu soo iibsaday gaari cusub oo qaali ah.

#### Grupp 5

Gaari xamuul ah **oo** raran ayaa shalay yimid.

Abaar dabadheer **oo** kulul baa sannadkaan jirta.

Balli buuxa **oo** biyo badan fatahana maalin walba.

#### 4.8

4.8 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Defininte noun + *oo* + descriptitve adjunct (+ *oo* + descriptitve adjunct)

#### Grupp 3

Muusihii oo faraxsan baan shalay la kulmay.

Gaadhibii Toyoto oo qaali ahaa ee Jabaan laga keenay.

Caligii oo habsan ah ayaa yimi.

#### Grupp 2

1. **Saxaafadda** dalka Soomaaliya oo raadinaysa gabadh soomaaliyeed oo 25 jir ah.

2. Dadka Soomaaliyeed waa **dad** naxariis badan oo wanaagsan.

3. **Booliska** dalka Ingiriiska oo qabtay **tuug** 40 jir ah oo ka soo jeeda Turkiga.

#### Grupp 4

Cali waxa uu baxay **caruurta** oo hurudaysa

Axmed **baabuurka** oo socda ayuu ka booday.

Haka tagin **guriga nalka** oo shidan.

#### Grupp 5

**Geela oo** ah xayawaan faa'iido badan, caanana macaan.

Odayga **oo** ah 90 jir kuna dhashay degmadaTaleex baa yimid.

**Guriga weyn oo** la dhisay 1950kii waa mid gaboobay.

#### 4.9

4.9 Given three other examples of a noun phrase containing

Definite noun + defining adjunct (+ *ee* + defining adjunct)

#### Grupp 3

Dharka ardayda iskoolka ee dhulka u eg.

Cumar gaarigiisa hoostiisu ee gaduudan. ??

Fardowso wiilkeeda yar ee gaaban.

#### Grupp 2

Saca jirran ee lo'da eryada marmar.

Geedseexde waa odayga shaatiga weyn ee timaha malaasan.

Ma aragtaa gaarigacanka madow ee yaalla irridda agteeda?

#### Grupp 4

Macallinkii hore ee xisaabta ayaa soo laabtay.

Qurbajoogta Soomaaliyeed ee Iswiidhan ku nool waa boqol kun.

?? Kooxda IFK Göteborg ee ka dhisan waddanka Iswiidhan ayaa guulaysatay.

#### Grupp 5

Dugsiga Carabiga ee Sheekh Yuusuf baa fiican.

Iidda weyn ee soonfurta ayaa soo dhow.

Wiilka yimid ee laxooxda keenay waa Xasan.

#### 4.10

4.10 Can you think of any exceptions to the four rules about the use of 'oo' and 'ee'?

This seems to be an exception. According to the rule only 'oo' should be used after indefinite nouns.

Qor qoraal gaaban ee ku saabsan mid ka mid ah saaxiibbadaa. (from a schoolbook).

What do you think?

## Grupp 2

Qor **qoraal** gaaban **oo** ku saabsan mid ka mid ah saaxiibbadaa... i think (**oo**) should be used in this sentence.

## Grupp 5

"oo and ee" both are conjunctions Exa.

1- Guriga aan ku **nooolahay** ee( oo) fog baan u  
socdaa. (Verb)

2- **Wiilkayga** oo daallan baan arkay. (Noun-definite)

3- Cab **caanaha** oo ha daadin!

Kaalay, aan baxnee

## Grupp 5

Qor **qoraal** gaaban **oo** ku saabsan mid ka mid ah saaxiibbadaa.

"oo" verkar vara vanligare än "ee" i vissa sammanhang.

1-Xalay baan seexday **oo** aan nastay.(Vanlig)

2- Xalay baan seexday **ee** aan nastay. (Ej används)

3- Markii aan xalay seexday **ee** aan nastay baan imid.}

4- Markii aan xalay seexday **oo** aan nastay baan imid.} 3 och 4 har samma betydelse.

# Unit 6

## The Internal Structure of Verb Phrases (< 7)

### 6.1 The verb phrase (VP)

Just like the noun phrase (NP) has specific structures in specific languages, the same is true for verb phrases (VP).

These optional elements must occur in the above order.

The pronouns and prepositions must be contracted into one word.

The Somali verb phrase contains a main verb (or head verb), and it may also contain an auxiliary verb (or a helping verb). Another possibility is that it contains an adjective followed by the verb *yahay* (and possibly also an auxiliary verb).

[Faadumo]<sup>NP</sup> [waxa ay]<sup>PP</sup> [*qortay*]<sup>VP</sup> [qoraalkan gaaban]<sup>NP</sup>  
[Galabta]<sup>NP</sup> [xaggee]<sup>NP</sup> [baad]<sup>PP</sup> [*tegi doontaa*]<sup>VP</sup>?  
[Dugsigoodu]<sup>NP</sup> [waa]<sup>PP</sup> [*yar yahay*]<sup>VP</sup>

It is also important to remember that the root morpheme ah- is deleted after an adjective.

Before the verb (or adj.+verb) a certain type of small words may occur. The set of words and their order is fixed.

[Waxa ay]<sup>PP</sup> [*ka timid*]<sup>VP</sup> [*Jowhar*]<sup>NP</sup>  
[Waxa uu]<sup>PP</sup> [*ku fiican yahay*]<sup>VP</sup> [sayniska]<sup>NP</sup>  
[Baabuurtu]<sup>NP</sup> [waxa ay]<sup>PP</sup> [*u soo kala hormareen*]<sup>VP</sup> [horsanaanta sawirku muujinayo]<sup>NP</sup>.

Read about the small words that belong to the verb phrase in Zholkovskij's (1979: 309–333) *Somali syntax*. Study the table on page 328 very carefully.

### 6.3 Clitics

Many small words in a language do not occur independently. They always occur together with another more important word, a so called **host word**, that "carries" the smaller word along with it. This could be said about many of the small words that occur in the Somali verb phrase. Such small words are referred to as **clitics**.

In some sense they behave almost like affixes (i.e. prefixes or suffixes). In the verb phrase they always occur somewhere before the verb, but on the other hand, they can be uttered as independent words, even if they are not really used on their own.

Clitics are said to be **syntactically free** but **phonologically bound**, i.e. pronounced together with their host word, and there is often only one stress (high tone) in the whole group of words. But in other, syntactic ways, clitics behave as independent words.

Also the difference between the long and short personal pronouns could be said to be a difference between independent forms (*aniga, adiga...*) and clitic forms (*aan, aad, uu, ay, la, aannu, aynu, aydin; i, ku, na, ina, idin, is*). The host word of the subject pronouns is usually the sentence particle (e.g. *waa ay*), and the host of the object pronouns as well as the indefinite subject pronoun *la* is a word in the verb phrase (e.g. *i aragtay*).

There are also so called second position clitics in Somali, the conjunctions *-na* and *-se*. They occur after the first word or the first phrase of a clause, and it doesn't matter much what kind of word it is attached to.

Somali also shows **clitic doubling** of personal pronouns. The clitic is used even if there is an NP with the exact same meaning.

*Diinku waxa uu leeyahay qolof adag.*

*Marnaba ma sii ogeyn in Wasiirku uu fursaddaas uga faa'iideysan doono in uu aniga i dacweeyo.*

## 6. Terminology

Verb phrase, main verb, auxiliary verb, clitic, host word

## 6. Additional reading

Read: Kroeger (2005), Chapter 17. Clitics, pages 316-329.

Zholkovskij (1979), Appendix VII. Preverbal particles, 309–333.

## 6. Old Exercises

7.1 What is the definition of an auxiliary verb?

7.2 Somali only has a handful of auxiliary verbs. How many auxiliary verbs are there in Somali? Write one simple sentence to illustrate each auxiliary verb that you can think of.

7.3 Give two example sentences with two auxiliary verbs after each other in the same clause.

7.4 Give two example sentences with a combination of two prepositions. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

7.5 Give two example sentences with a combination of three prepositions. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

7.6 Give two example sentences with a combination of a pronoun and two prepositions. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

7.7 Give two example sentences with a combination of two prepositions and the negation. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

7.8 Give an example sentence each with the five different **second object pronouns** *kay, kaa, kayo, keen, kiin*. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

7.9 In the table on page 328, Zholkovskij (1979) gives the words *hoos, ag, dhex, hor, kor, dul* in column 11. These are originally nouns, but have developed into **verb phrase particles** that occur as the last element right before the verb, i.e. after pronouns, prepositions and other particles. Can you think of any more words in this group? **Prove it** with an example sentence where this word is preceded by one of the other small words that belong to the verb phrase. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

7.10 Use the two Somali **second position clitics** in three sentences and show that they may attach to words in different word classes.

# Discussion 2022

## 1 Auxiliary verb

What is the definition of an auxiliary verb?

### Grupp 2

Waa falkaaliye kaaba fal madaxeedka weedha.

### Grupp 5

Falkalkaaliye/ falgargaare wuxuu isku lammaanayaa fal kale, waxayna isku noqdaan hal curiye, ama waxay **hordhacaan** fal kale waxayna isku noqdaan hal curiye.

An auxiliary verb in a Somali language occurs **before** another verb and become together with same element or is complementary to each other.

### Grupp 3

An *auxiliary verb* ( helping verb) is a verb that helps another verb express its **tense, mood, or voice**.

#### **main verb in the infinitive**

Tusaale: Waa uu hadli **doonaa**.

**form:** hadli-infinitiv                                  doonaa-presens  
**frasens/kostruktionens** betydelse: futurum

hjälpverb: doonaa (enkelt presens)

huvudverb: doonayaa (progressivt presens)

## 2 Auxiliaries

Somali only has a handful of auxiliary verbs. How many auxiliary verbs are there in Somali? Write one simple sentence to illustrate each auxiliary verb that you can think of.

### Grupp 2

doonaa, jiray, lahaa, karaa, rabaa

1. Wax waan cuni doonaa.
2. Waxa la siin jiray cunto.
3. Wuu siin lahaa lacagta.
4. Diinku waxa uu hurdi karaa laba bilood.
5. Waan qori rabaa casharka. Jag tänker/avser/kommer skriva läxan

6. Waan qori doonaa casharka. Jag kommer att/ska

Waxaan rabaa=doonayaa in aan qoro casharka. Jag vill

### Grupp 5

Jir → waan tegi **juray (Falkalkaaliye)**

doon → waan tegi **doonaa (Falkaaliye)**

leh → waan tegi **lahaa (Falkaaliye)**

kar → way qori **kartaa**

waa → waan maqli **waayay**

rab → way ooyi **rabtaa**

gaar → wuu duuli **gaaray** var nära att

La' → waan garan **la'ahay** har svårt att

These first three verbs behave both as auxiliary verbs and independent verbs.

1. jirey, 2. doon, 3. Leh. These verbs even can function as independent verbs consider the following examples
2. Geel jire magaalada ayuu **jiri juray**
3. Berri war baa laga hadli **doonaa**
4. Baadiyaha buu xoolo ku **raaci lahaa**
5. + rabaa. **gaaraa**

### Grupp 3

Doonaa, karaa, juray, lahaa, rabaa, waayay

Cumar waa uu tegi **doonaa**.

Maanta xagee baad u socon **rabtaa**.

Iskuulku waan joogi **karaa**.

Waxaan heli kari **lahaa**.

Waxaan ku noolaan **jiray** Mudug.

Waa uu la fariisan **waayay**.

### 3 Two auxiliaries

Give two example sentences with two auxiliary verbs after each other in the same clause.

#### Grupp 2

1. Haddii aad lacagta isoo dirto waan **samayn kari doonaa** sidaas
2. Waan **cuni kari lahaa** haddii aad ii kariso

#### Grupp 5

Way **jiri kartaa** toban sano.

Wuu **dooni karaa** xoolaha.

#### Grupp 3

- 1- Markii uu yaraa wuxuu **qaadi kari jiray** 250 kg.
- 2- Markii uu arkay gabarta, ayuu la **hadli kari waayay**.

### 4 Two prepositions

Give two example sentences with a combination of two prepositions. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

#### Grupp 2

1. Barahu waxa uu ardayda [ **ú kala** saaray] gabdho iyo wiilal
2. Wuxuu [ **ugá** sheekeeyay] sheeko baraley.

#### Grupp 5

1.Garaadkii baa noó diráy dadka.

**ka+la = kala**

2. 2. Waxaan [ **ulá** baxay] magac fiican

U+la

### Grupp 3

Waxay [ **kala'** hadashay] arrimahooda.

Shalaambood ayaannu bidix [ **uga'** leexannay.]

Dhalinyaradu ma raacaan waxa uu waalidku [ **kula'** taliyo.]

### 5 Preposition clusters

Give two example sentences with a combination of three prepositions. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

### Grupp 2

1. Maraykanku wuxuu ciidankiisa **ugalá/kagalá** baxay Afgaanistaan si deg deg ah.
2. Muxuu Maraykanku ciidankiisa **ugalá** baxay Afgaanistaan?

### Grupp 5

1. Isaga ayaa alaabta **lagaga** tegáy.

looga < la+u+ka

kaga < la+ka+ka / la+ku+ka / la+ku+ku

laguugu

lagaaga < la+ku(dig)+u+ka / la+ku(dig)+ka+ka      kuu < ku(dig)+u      kaa < ku(dig)+ka

2. Lacagtii wuxuu [ **ugalá** baxay] Bangiga si fudud.

U+ka+la

3. Baraha iyo ardaydu waxay **kú kala** tágeen dooddii.

ku+ka+la

### Grupp 3

Anniga iyo waalidkey waxaan **kú kala** nóolnahay aduunka.

Waxaan alaabtaydii **ugaga'** tagáy waddada.

### 6 Pronoun + preposition

Give two example sentences with a combination of a pronoun and two prepositions. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

### Grupp 2

1. Waxaan **kugulá** talinayaa in aad wax barato.
2. Waxaa bangigiisa **lagalá** baxay lacag badan.

### Grupp 5

1. Bareyaal kala duwan aaya dugsiga **noogu** yimíd.

na+u+ka

2. Godoomiyihii baa berri **idinkaga** farxin doona dallacaad.

Idin+ku+ka

### Grupp 3

- o Sheeko fiican baa carruurta **looga'**( la+u+ka) sheekeeyey.
- o Berri ayaan magaalada **idinkula'**(idin+ku+la) kulmi doonaa.

## 7 Preposition + negator

Give two example sentences with a combination of two prepositions and the negation. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

1. Waxba **ugumá** harin bangigiisa.
2. **Lagumá** soo raaci karo.

### Grupp 5

1. **kalama** hadlín arrintan wasiirka wax soo saarka beeraha.
2. **lagama** maarmó caddaaladda.
3. **lagama** yaabo inaan ku arkó.

### Grupp 3

**lagama'** maarmo waxbarasho.

**laguma'** ordi karo kabو la`aan.

## 8 Second object pronoun

Give an example sentence each with the five different **second object pronouns** *kay, kaa, kayo, keen, kiin*. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

## Grupp 2

1. Wuxuu isla sawiray walaalkáa possessive!
2. Waxaa dhalay adeerkayó
3. Waxaa la sawiran saaxiibkéen
4. Wuxuu isla sawiray walaalkáa
5. Wuxuu isla sawiray walaalkáa

## Grupp 5

1. Wuxuu isla sawiray walaalkáa
2. Baraha [noó **kaá** sheegáy] ín aad fasalka ka mid tahay.
3. Wuxuu isla sawiray walaalkáa
4. Wuxuu isla sawiray walaalkáa
5. Faarax baa noo **kiin** ammaanáy.
6. Wuxuu isla sawiray walaalkáa

Jag känner inte henne. Jag känner henne inte.

## Grupp 3

- 1- Saaxiibkaa ayaa ii **kaa** sheegay. **iiga?**
- 2- Taliyahii hore ayaa nooga **kiin** warramay.
- 3- Nur ayaa isaga **kay** warramay.
- 4- Iyagu way isaga **kayo** warrameen.
- 5- Daa! Ha isaga **keen** warrameene.

## 9 Locational verb particles

In the table on page 328, Zholkovskij (1979) gives the words *hoos, ag, dhex, hor, kor, dul* in column 11. These are originally nouns, but have developed into **verb phrase particles** that occur as the last element right before the verb, i.e. after pronouns, prepositions and other particles. Can you think of any more words in this group? **Prove it** with an example sentence where this word is preceded by one of the other small words that belong to the verb phrase. Mark the position of the high tone(s) in the verb phrase with an accent sign.

## Grupp 2

- **gees, dhinac, daba, garab**

1. Ninka ratiga la **daba** socday xariga.
2. Dumarku cayaar bay ka **dhinac** wadeen
3. Wawa uu ka **gees** hadlay aabbihii.
4. Maxay la **garab** galeen wiilashu?      compound verb?

## Grupp 5

dhinac, bannaan, gadaal, gudo, caarad, dib, oogo, bartan, gees, **sanka hore, foodda hore, afaafka**

1. **Dhinac** fariisó.
2. **Gadaal** deg u deg gadaal.    Gadaal fadhiya    gadaal eeg
3. **Gudo** gál casharka.
4. **Caaradda hore** ka jár.        hore - adjektiv
5. **Afaafka hore** ee guriga dhíg kabaha.
6. Dibbaa loo fiirin karaa arrintan.
7. dib baa loo noqday

## Grupp 3

1. **Barbar:** Waan ku barbar fadhiyaa.
2. **Gees:** Labada qof waa ay is gees socdeen.
3. **Dhinac:** Waa ay is dhinac jiifaan.
4. **Kal:** waa ay is **kal** og yihii.                kal
5. **Oogada:** Buuggu miiska **oogadiisuu** saaran yahay.

## 10 Clitics

Use the two Somali **second position clitics** in three sentences and show that they may attach to words in different word classes.

## Grupp 2

Abdisalan wuu hadlay aniguse waan aamusanaa.

Abdisalan wuu hadlay gabadhiisuna way aamusnayd.

Geedseexde wuu seexdaa **markuu cunana** wuu baxaa.

Waan wacay balse wuu iga qaban waayay

## Grupp 5

1. Safarkii hore Xasan**na** waa ina raacay, Saalax**se** wuu iska joogay. (Noun)
2. Isagun**a** waa ooyay, iyaduse waa ay qososhay. (Pronoun class).
3. Akhri buugga, qorse casharka. (verb class).
4. Ku kala taga meesha hadda, laakiin**se** berri kaalaya. (conjunction class)
5. Kan qaado kaas**na** ka tag. (Demonstrative class)

### Grupp 3

1- Ardaydii kale oo dhan waa loo sheegay, **Amaalba** way ogayd.  
**-ba** not always in second position

- 2- Shan sanno ayaan is qabnay, **wax carruur ahse** ma lihin.
- 3- Habardugaag oo dhami qayb ayay cunayaan, libaaxu**na** qaybta soo hadhay.
- 4- Mid adigu qaado, **midda kalena** sii Cali. weliba

# Unit 7

## Semantic Roles & Grammatical Relations (< 2)

### 7.1 Arguments / Mowduucyo

The predicate of a clause functions as the head of the clause. Most of the other parts of the clause are dependent on the predicate, and the predicate determines what other parts we **may** add to the clause, but also what other parts we **must** add. Those other parts are called **arguments**. Mansuur & Puglielli (1999) call them **mowduucyo**.

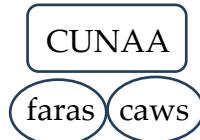
Every predicate takes a specific number of **arguments** in order to build clauses that make sense.

Hal mowduuc:



*Farasku waa uu ordayaa.*

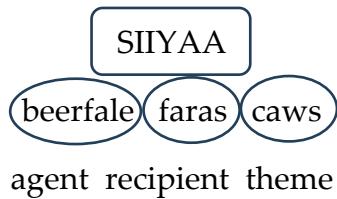
Laba mowduuc:



*Farasku waxa uu cunayaa cawska.*

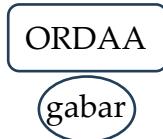
*Waxa uu cunayaa cawska.*

Saddex mowduuc:

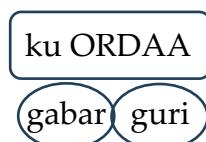


*Beerfaluhu waxa uu faraska siinayaa cawska.*

If changes are made to the predicate, the number of noun phases will often change as well. If a preposition is added to the predicate, an additional noun phrase is also required.

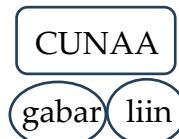


*Gabartu waa ay ordaysaa.*



*Gabartu waxa ay ku ordaysaa guriqa.*

If the verb is altered through a derivational suffix, the number of noun phrases the verb takes will usually change.



*Gabartu waxa ay cunaysaa liin.*



*Gabartu waa ay cuntaynaysaa.*

## 7.2 Semantic Roles

There is a large number of different functions that a noun phrase may fill in specific sentences. These functions are called **SEMANTIC ROLES**. This term clearly indicates that these roles are based on the meaning of the noun phrase in a specific sentence.

**Agent / Fale** – actively carries out an action

E.g. giver, runner, killer, speaker, dancer...

*Dadkani waxay dhisayaan guri cusub.*

subject

agent

**Experiencer** – perceives what is happening, but is not in control of the action.

May be further subdivided into **cogniser, perceiver & emoter**. E.g. who thinks, believes, knows, presumes (cogniser); who hears, smells, feels, tastes (perceiver); who likes, loves, hates (emoter)

*The tourists heard the train.*

*The boy felt very sad.*

*The answer pleased the old man.*

**Causer** – involuntairly causes the event

*The water destroyed my computer.*

subject

causer (orsak)

**Patient** - is affected by the actiona and undergoes a change

E.g. what is broken, destroyed, killed...

*Dadkani waxay dhisteen guri qurux badan.*

*Waxay gawraceen ridii.*

oblique

patient

*Odaygii wuu dhintay.*

subject

patient

**Theme** – is affected by the action, but does not undergo any change

E.g. what is given, moved, located...

*Buug buu akrinayaa Axmed.*

oblique

theme

*The stones rolled down the hill.*

*Caanuhu miiska ayaa ay saaran yihiin..*

subject  
theme

Ubaxyadu way qurux badan yihii.

subject  
theme

### Stimulus -

E.g. what is seen, heard, liked...

### Recipient / Mottagare / Guddoome – receives something

E.g. to whom something is given, sent, handed over...

Ayeeyadiis buu siiyay keeggii.

*Cali waxa uu Sahro siiyay warqaddan.*

*Cali waxa uu Sahro u diray warqaddan.*

Awoowihii baa helay warqaddii.

siiyaa + agent/subject + theme/oblique + recipient/oblique  
u diraa + agent/subject + theme/oblique + recipient/oblique  
helaa                           + theme/oblique + recipient/subject

### Beneficiary / Beeficient / Faa'iidayste – benefits from the event

*David baked a cake for his grandmother.*

Qoyskeeda ayaa ay u shiishay kalluunka.  
oblique       subj       oblique  
beneficiary   agent      patient  
faa'iidayste   fale      beddelme ??

### Possessor – who owns or controls another NP

Ninku wuxuu leeyahay laba carruur ah.

### Instrument, Tool / Redskap, instrument / Qalab – the means or tool used to perform the action

*The thief broke the window with the hammer.*

### Material / Material / Alaab -

*Gogoshu caws bay ka samaysan tahay.*

### Accompaniment / Sällskap / Wehelyeel -

**Time / Tid / Wakhti –**

**Manner / Sätt / Si**

**Purpose / Syfte / Ujeeddo, hadaf**

**Reason / Orsak / Sabab**

**Degree / Grad / Heer (Darajo)**

**Place / Plats / Meel** – which may be subdivided into

**Location / Position –**

*Cuntadu waxay ku taallaa miiska korkiisa.*

**Source / Ursprung / Il, isir** – the entity from which movement emerges

**Goal / Mål / Yool** – the entity the movement is directed towards

*The girl threw the ball to the boy.*

**Path / Väg / Jid –**

You will most probably recognize many of the above labels from the traditional division of adverbials into different types.

**Waxay isu siiso cunto**

siiyaa – 3 argument

agent

recipient

theme

**u kariyaa** – 3 argument

agent                  hooyo

beneficiary        caruur

theme                hilib

**karsadaa** – 2 argument

*Naagtii waxay karsatay hilibkii.*

subject	agent + beneficiary	naag
oblique	theme	hilib

För autobenefaktiva verb är agent och beneficiary samma person och samma arguemnt (substantiv)

### 7.3 Grammatical Form and Grammatical Relations

Gramatically speaking, the arguments are **noun phrases** (NPs; oraah-magaceedyo, OM).

Besides the meaning of the different noun phrses in a clause, we are at the same time interested in the grammatical relations between the predicate and its noun phrases.

The grammatical relations may be indicated by the form of the words in the phrases. Somali doesn't have very much of that, only the subject endings (-u, -i, -aa). Certain other langaages, e.g. Kambaata and Oromo, have many more such forms that express other grammatical relations between the verb and the noun phrase.

The grammatical relations may also be indicated by the word order in some languages, e.g. Swedish and English, where clauses usually start with the subject and the indirect object must precede the direct object if no preposition is used. In the following example the grammatical relation between the words follows directly from the word order.

Lena *gav* barnen *vatten*.  
Lena *siisay* carruurta *biyo*  
subj.           indir.obj.   dir.obj.      (relations indicated by the word order template)  
'Lena waxay carruurtii siisay biyo.'

Russian has a very free word order, just like Somali. In the following Russian sentence, the endings clearly indicate the grammatical relations. For a feminine noun -a indicates the subject, the ending -am indicates the indirect object in the plural, and the ending -u indicates the direct object.

*Lena dala rebyatam vodu*  
 Lena.SBJ siisay carruur.IND.OBJ biyo.DIR.OBJ  
 'Lena waxay carruurtii siisay biyo.'

In Russian any other word order is also possible, with different focus effects, i.e. putting focus on different noun phrases.

*Lena dala vodu rebyatam.* 'Lena waxay siisay biyo carruurtii.'  
*Rebyatam Lena dala vodu.* 'Carruurtii waxay Lena siisay biyo.'  
*Vodu dala rebyatam Lena.* 'Biyo waxa carruurtii siisay Lena.'

Yet other languages put small grammatical particles immediately after each noun phrase, e.g. in Japanese the topic (usually the subject) is followed by the particle *wa* and the direct object is followed by the particle *o*.

*Watashi wa choko o tabemasu.*  
 aniga TOP shukulaato OBJ cunay  
 'Sukulaato ayaan cunay.'

In Somali, it is only the subject that is marked grammatically. All other noun phrase are unmarked, and it is only the meaning of the words that help us interpret the role of each unmarked noun phrase in a Somali clause. Word order does not really tell us very much about the grammatical relations between the phrases in Somali, since the word order is very free, any given set of phrases can be arranged in a number of different ways with different word order.

In Somali, a highly relevant grammatical distinction can be noticed between

- noun phrases that are subject-marked, and
- noun phrases that are not subject-marked.

*Beerfaluhu* *waxa uu faraska siinayaa cawska.*

Another highly relevant grammatical distinction is between

- noun phrases that **determine** the form of the predicate verb, and

*Cali*(M) *ayaa bisadda siinaya(M) cunto.*  
*Sahro*(F) *ayaa faraska siinaysa(F) cawska.*

- noun phrases that **do not affect** the form of the predicate verb.

*Cali ayaa bisadda(F) siinaya(M) cunto(F).*  
*Sahro ayaa faraska(M) siinaysa(F) cawska(M).*

Therefore, strictly grammatically, we may only distinguish between two types of noun phrases: **SUBJECT** and **OBLIQUE**. In Somali we might want to call them **YEELE** and **MAYEELE**.

Any other distinctions that we might choose to make, such as object and adverbial, are actually not grammatical categories, but rather very broad, general semantic categories. The closest we can come to a grammatical division between object and adverbial is if we assume that adverbial noun phrases require to be associated with a preposition in the predicate, whereas objects are not associated with any preposition in the predicate. However, this is also a rather problematic division, since it is actually not possible to prove grammatically which noun phrase a certain preposition is associated with. It is again only our knowledge about the surrounding world that provides us with that information.

Therefore, instead of making a “fake” grammatical distinction between object and adverbial, it would be more correct to just talk about **oblique** noun phrases in Somali, and then subdivide them based on the semantic roles that they play: **theme** or **patient** (instead of object), **recipient** or **beneficiary** (instead of indirect object) and **place, time, manner, tool** etc. (instead of adverbial).

PREDICATE	SYNTACTIC RELATION	SEMANTIC ROLE	
<i>karaa, kartaa</i>	subject	patient	<i>biyo</i>
<i>kariyaa, karisaa</i>	subject	agent	<i>hooyo</i>
	oblique	patient	<i>biyo</i>
<i>u kariyaa, karisaa</i>	subject	agent	<i>aabbe</i>
	oblique	patient	<i>bariis</i>
	oblique	beneficent	<i>carruur</i>
<i>karsadaa, karsataa</i>	subject	agent+beneficiary	<i>aabbe</i>
	oblique	patient	<i>bariis</i>

\* \* \* OBLIQUE = inte-subject = MAYEELE << LAYEELE+FALKaab

The traditional distinction between object and adverbial is not strictly grammatically relevant, since that distinction is not expressed in a clear grammatical way, e.g. through some endings or some small function words or by the word order. The traditional distinction between object and adverbial is an unfortunate mix of grammar and semantics.

\* \* \*

Besides the **ARGUMENTS**, which are necessary in order to build a sensible clause with any specific verb, there are other noun phrases that can be added optionally to clauses. Such optional noun phrases are called **ADJUNCTS**. Adjuncts are never obligatory.

### Sabti

The number of arguments is always equal to the exact amount required by the verb, whereas the number of adjuncts is not limited by grammar, but rather by the surrounding reality.

**Adjuncts** can of course be subcategorized based on their semantic roles (like traditional adverbial phrases), e.g.

- time adjuncts
- place adjuncts
- manner adjuncts
- etc.

If we want to distinguish the oblique arguments from the oblique adjuncts, we may talk about subject, complements and adjuncts. Thus the oblique noun phrases fall into those required by the verb, the complements of the verb, and the option ones, the adjuncts.

On grammatical grounds, the **noun phrases** in a clause can be sub-divided into a **subject, complements** and **adjuncts** (instead of the subject, object (direct and indirect), and adverbials in traditional grammar).

Based on the grammatical realtions, we may distinguish between five types of NPs:

**Argument** – a noun phrase that is required by the predicate.

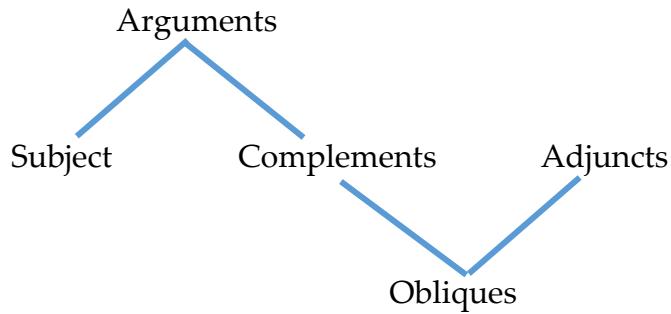
**Subject** – the argument that determines the form of the predicate. In addition, in Somali this argument is often subject-marked, but not always.

**Complement** – an argument, other than the subject, that is required by the predicate.

**Adjunct** – a noun phrase that is not required by the the verb, and therefore also not an argument of the verb.

**Oblique** – a noun phrase, other than the subject, that is part of the clause.

### Types of noun phrases



Verbs that take an oblique NP as their complement are called transitive verbs (fal-gudbayaal), e.g.

*Waxay gawraceen ridii.*

Some verbs take two obliques without a preposition. That is the case if there are three necessary noun phrases connected to a verb that is not accompanied by a preposition. Verbs of this type are called ditransitive verbs (fal-laba-gudbayaal), e.g. the verb *siiyaa* requires a subject and two oblique NPs as complements.

*Waxa uu faraska siinayaa cawska.*

## 7.4 Subject marking in Somali

Subject NPs are indicated in Somali in a number of different ways.

non-focused subject

- subject ending
- clitic subject pronoun
- full verb agreement

*Naagtu waxa ay akhrinaysaa sheeko gaaban.*

focused subject

- lack of subject ending
- lack of subject pron
- reduced verb agreeement

*Naagta baa \_ akhrinaysa sheeko gaaban.*

We will look at the Somali subject marking in much more detail in a later Unit of this course.

There are instances when subject marking occurs before a focus particle, but then the subject marking occurs in an embedded subclause.

Maxamed oo [uu u duuban yahay afkiisu] ayaa albaabka taagan.

Rati rooraya oo [uu u laaban yahay jilibkiisu] ayaa isbuurtay.

Macallimadda oo [uu beddelan yahay wajigeedu] ayaa fasalka ku soo noqotay.

## 7.5 The semantic roles of the grammatical subject

The subject of a clause can correspond to many different semantic role. The meaning of the subject differs from one verb to another.

**Agent** – actively carries out an action

Dadkani waxay dhisayaan guri cusub.

**Causer** – involuntarily causes the event

*The water destroyed my computer.*

**Theme** – is affected by the action, but does not undergo any change

*The stones rolled down the hill.*

*The milk is on the table.*

*The flowers are beautiful.*

**Patient** - is affected by the action and undergoes a change

Odaygii wuu dhintay.

**Recipient** – receives something

Awoowihiis baa helay warqaddii.

**Possessor** – who owns or controls another NP

Ninku wuxuu leeyahay laba carruur ah.

**Experiencer** – perceives what is happening, but is not in control of the action

*The tourists heard the train.*

subject	not-subject=oblique
experiencer	causer

*maqlaa* - 2 argument 2 mowduuc

*subject – experiencer* *yeele* - dareeme

*oblique – causer* *mayeele* – theme??

*The boy felt very sad.*

## 7.6 Impersonal clauses

Clauses where no semantic agent really exists.

*It rains. It snows. Det regnar. Det blåser.*

*Saltet löses upp i vattnet. Lektionen börjar kl. åtta.*

With meteorological verbs, some other noun is the grammatical subject.

*Roobku wuu da'ayaa.*

Somali anticausative verbs (with the suffix *-m-/an-*) often express effects of natural forces.

*Cusbadu way ku milantaa biyaha.* Here, *cusbadu* is the semantic theme.

*Casharku waxa uu bilaabmaa siddeedda subaxnimo.*

## 7.7 Indefinite agent clauses

Somali *la*, no referent in irreal clauses, unknow agent/referent in realis clauses.

## 7. Terminology

Argument                    Mowduuc

## 7. Additional reading

Kroeger (2005), p. 38–47 + 51–63

Mansur & Puglielli. 1999. *Barashada Naxwaha af Soomaaliga*, p. XX-XX

Downloadable from <https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2171>

## 7. New Homework

Select five medium length simple clauses (without subordinate clauses) per person and determine the semantic roles of all the noun phrases. Ideally disucss them in a group. Submit your sentences and your analysis of them in Canvas at least 24 hours before our next lesson.

## 7. Old Exercises

2.1. Suggest two more verbs that require one argument, two other verbs that require two arguments and two other verbs that require three arguments, in addition to those mentioned in section 2.2 above. Use everyday verbs and write a simple example clause for each verb.

2.2. Suggest suitable translations of the terms for semantic roles listed in section 2.3 above. Also give an example sentence for each semantic role and highlight the relevant noun phrase with boldface.

2.3. Build two simple Somali sentences with three argument: **a subject and two objects**, but no oblique and no adjunct.

2.4. Build two simple Somali sentences with **a subject, one object and one oblique**, but no adjunct.

2.5. Build two simple Somali sentences with **one oblique and one adjunct**. Subject & object may be added if suitable.

2.6. Build two simple Somali sentences with **one object and two adjuncts**. A subject may be added if suitable, but no oblique.

2.7. Translate the three sentences in section 2.5 (Well-formedness) into Somali. Give one more Somali example of each kind of ill-formed sentence, where two should still be grammatically well-formed, but odd.

## Discussion 2022

### 1. Number of arguments

Suggest two more verbs that require one argument, two other verbs that require two arguments and two other verbs that require three arguments, in addition to those mentioned in section 2.2 above. Use everyday verbs and write a simple example clause for each verb.

### Grupp 3

- 1. **Xaawo** waa ay hadlaysaa.
  - 2. **Aamino** waa ay qosleysaa.
  - 3. **Xaawo** waxa ay maareysaa **dhar**.
  - 4. **Xaawo** waxa ay sugeysaa **bas**.
  - 5. **Cali** waxa uu **buugga** saarayaa **miiska**.
  - 6. **Cali** waxa uu **qalinka** dhigayaa **dhulka**.

### Grupp 4

- Jabay + hal OM Geedku waa uu jabay.

Dhacdaa + hal OM Qoraxdu waa ay dhacdaa.

Galayaa + laba OM Cali waxa uu galayaa gurigiisa.

Sawiray + laba OM Faadumo waxa ay sawirtay maroodi.

Qaadaya + saddex OM kirishboygu waxa uu lacagta **ka qaadaya** rakaabka.

Qaybisay + saddex OM Caasho waxay ay rooti **u qaybisay** masaakiinta.

## Grupp 2

Libaaxu waa uu soconayaa.

Libaaxu waa uu seexanayaa

Libaaxu waxa uu arkayaa ugaadh

Libaaxu waxa uu eryanayaa sagaaro.

Ninku waxa uu libaaxa geynayaa beerta.

Ninku waxa uu martida tusayaa guriga

## Grupp 4+

- 1 argument      Baxaya, tagaya

**Ali** waa uu baxay

**Ahmed** waa uu tagay

2 argument      aadaya, iibiniya

**Ali** waxa uu aadaya **dalkiisa**

**Sagal** waxa ay iibineysaa **dukaanka**

3 argument      Dhigayaa, lisayaa

**Baruhu cashar** buu **u dhigayaa ardeydayda**

**Hooyadu** waxa ay **lo'ada ka liseysaa caano**

## Grupp 5

1b.Xasan waa shanlaystaa

1t.Xasan baa toosay

2b.Xasan baa dhagax tuuray

2t. Xasan baa kubbad laaday

3b.Xasan baa ubax siiyay Maryama

3t. Xasan baa biyo siiyay Waysha.

## 2 Semantic Roles

2.2. Suggest suitable translations of the terms for semantic roles listed in section 2.3 above. Also give an example sentence for each semantic role and highlight the relevant noun phrase with boldface.

### Grupp 3

• English	Svenska	Soomaali
Agent	agent	<b>sababe</b> , wax bilaabe, sababa ama curiya dhacdooyinka.  MASUUL  <b>fale</b>  abaabule  Wakiil, mas'uul faleed, hawl wadeen
Experiencer	uppleva re	<b>arke/ogaade</b> , shay firfircoon oo garan kara dareenka ama xaalad gaar ah.  WAAYA ARAG  goobjooge  dareeme  dareen kiciye
Recipient	mottaga re	<b>guddoome</b> , aqbale, loo dire, macmiil, noole wax hela ama hanta.  QAATE

		Qaate hele gudoome
Beneficiary	förmåns tagare	<b>dheef-qaate</b> , faa'iide, dhaxal-qaate, walax ama noole kaas oo qaata faa'iidada wax la sameeyey  FAA'IIDE  Faa'iidayte  loo adeege  faa'iide
Instrument (Tool)	Instrument	<b>qalab/aalad</b> , wax aan noolayn oo agentigu wax ku qabto  QALAB  agab  la adeegsade (qalab)  aalad ama qalab
Theme	tema	<b>mawduuc/fikrad</b> , waxa goobtiisa la beddelayo ama la cayimayo  MAWDUUC  mawduuc  hage  mowduuc ama arrin
Patient	patient	<b>la duufsan karo</b> , la abuuri karo, xaalad kasta oo loo maleego  DHIBANE

		lagu fale la daryeèle la yeele
Stimulus	stimulus	<b>dareen kiciye</b> , darariye, xoodaamiye, xiiso kordhiye ku saabsan wax kasta oo la arko, maqlo, dareemo, xasuusto, jeclaado, naco i.w.m.  DAREEN KICIYE  Dhaliye (dhib dhaliye, sheeko dhaliye)  saameeye  carin,ama kicin
Location (Position)	plats	<b>goobta dhacdada</b> sida isha, meesha, dariiqu door buu ka qaataa  GOOB  goob  goob  meel ama goob
Source	källa	<b>isha</b> wax ka soo burqadaan, asalka ama barbilowga dhaqdhaqaqa  IL  Isha  il  isha ama xigasho
Goal	mål	<b>yoolka</b> ama bartilmaameedka, meesha uu u socdo iyo meesha                                  uu                                  ku dhammaado dhaqdhaqaqu.  YOOL

		Yool yool hadaf ama ujeedo
Path	väg	<b>jidka</b> ama dariiqa dhaqdhaqaaqa Daw marin dariiq ama jid am waddo
Accompaniment	ackompanje mang	<b>wehel</b> , cidda la socota ama la xidhiidha waxqabadka falka Wehel kaabe/dhameystire wehel ama la jirid

Tusaale:

**Cali wiilkiisa**      aya      siiyey      **Sahro**      **xidhmo ubax ah.**  
 agent                          mottagare                          tema

**Xabbad tufaax ah**      aya      ka soo dhacday      **geedka.**  
 tema                                  källa

**Ninka weyn**      baa      fadhiyey      **Jardiinada.**  
 Agent                                  plats

**Caasho**      waxay      **cawska**      ku xirtay      **xadhib.**  
 agent                                  patient                                  instrument

**Baabuurka ka dhaqaaqay**      **istaanka basaska**      ee sii maraya      **Gebiley**

tema

källa

väg

wuxuu ku socdaa **Boorama.**

Mål

**Ayaan** waxay ulaynaysaa **bisadda.**

agent patient

**Odayga** waxaa laabqaaday **muusiga** dabacsan.

Upplevare stimulans

**Malabka** waxaa had iyo jeer cuna **madaxkutida.**

patient agent

**Aadan shaleemada** ayuu aaday, **isaga iyo saaxiibkiis.**

Agent Agent

**Aadan shaleemada** ayuu la aaday **saaxiibkiis.**  
SUBJ OBJ ADJUNCT

agent plats-mål ackompanjemang

**Aadan shaleemada** ayuu u raacay **saaxiibkiis.**  
**Aadan shaleemada** ayuu u raacay **Sahra.**  
**Sahra shaleemada** ayay u raacdøy **Aadan.**  
SUBJ ADJUNCT OBJ  
Agent accompaniment

\***Aadan shaleemada** ayay u raacdøy **Sahra.**  
OBJ SUBJ  
Accompaniment Agent

Grupp 4

- **Agent** är vanligtvis det grammatiska subjektet för verbet. ”MASUUL”

*Cali* waa uu seexday

**Experiencer** är den som tar emot effekten av en handling. ”WAAYA ARAG”

Aamina waxay dishay *walaasheed*.

**Recipient** är den som indikerar ”mottagaren” i en situation. ”QAATE”

Liibaan waxa uu cunto siinayaa *carruurtiisa*.

**Beneficiary** är den aktör som tar nytta av en händelse. ”FAA’IIDE”

Aabahay waxa uu u shaqeeyaa *shirkadda Volvo*.

**Instrument (Tool)** är det allt möjligt som man kan använda för att utföra ett arbete. ”QALAB”

**Mindi** ayaan ku jarjaray hilibka.

**Theme** är det som direkt tar emot verbs handling. ”MAWDUUC”

Maryan *laba moos* ayay guriga keentay.

**Patient** är det då verbet tecknar på att det händer något med en sak, och som påverkas av vad som händer med den. ”DHIBANE”

**Guriga** waxaa wasakheeyay Nuur.

**Stimulus** är den som trigger i en emotionell reaktionshändelse. ”DAREEN KICIYE”

Araydu waxa ay maqleen *jaraska*.

**Location (Position)** är platsen där något befinner sig eller äger rum. ”GOOB”

Qadadii waxaan ku cunnay *Jikada*.

**Source** är det ställe som någonting kommer ifrån. ”IL”

Ardo waxa ay dharka kasoo iibsatay *dukaanka*

**Goal** är den riktning mot vilken verbs handling rör sig. ”YOOL”

Zlatan waxa uu kubadda ku laaday *shabaqa*.

Path ....?

Accompaniment...?

## Grupp 2

- Agent : fale > Mukhtaar (agent) waxa uu albaabka (Patient) ku furay fure (Tool)

Experiencer: goobjooge, Cali **yaanyuur** buu arkay

Recipient: Qaate

Beneficiary: Faa'iidayte

Instrument (Tool): agab

Theme : mawduuc

Patient: lagu fale

Stimulus: Dhaliye (dhib dhaliye, sheeko dhaliye)

Location (Position): goob

Source: Isha

Goal: Yool

Path: Daw

Accompaniment: Wehel

## Grupp 4+

Agent: abaabule

Experiencer: dareeme

Recipient: hele

Beneficiary: loo adeege

Instrument (Tool): la adeegsade (qalab)

Theme: hage

Patient: la daryeele

Stimulus: saameeye

Location (Position): goob

Source: il

Goal: yool

Path: marin

Accompaniment: kaabe/dhameystire

**Examples:**

**Ali** waxa uu **yaanbu** ku qodayaa **beertiisa**

Agent Instrument Patient

**Badweynta Hindiya** baa **marta** Soomaaliya.

Theme Path

Waxaa ay **dhalinyaradu** daawanayaan **ciyaar**

Experiencer Stimulus

Webiga Juba oo ka yimaadaa **Itoobiya**, waxa uu ku dhamaadaa **Badweynta Hindiya**

Source Goal

**Sugulle caruurtii** buu usoo gaday **dharkii ciida**

Agent Beneficiary Theme

Waxa uu **yaanbu** ku qodayaa **beertiisa**

Agent Instrument Patient

**Badweynta Hindiya** baa **marta** Soomaaliya.

Theme Path

Waxaa ay **dhalinyaradu** daawanayaan **ciyaar**

Experiencer Stimulus

Webiga Juba oo ka yimaadaa **Itoobiya**, waxa uu ku dhamaadaa **Badweynta Hindiya**

Source Goal

**Sugulle caruurtii** buu usoo gaday **dharkii ciida**

Agent Beneficiary Theme

Grupp 5

1. Wiilku wuxuu gabadha u diray lacagtaas.

2. Barahu wuxuu ardayda u diray shaqo guri.

Grupp 5

• •

- - 1. Hooyo waxa ay u dirtay lacag shalay odayga buka.
  - 2. Aabe ayaa u diray dhaan reerka maanta.

Grupp 5

**Agent** = Wakiil, mas'ul faleed, hawl wadeen

**Tuugga** baa albaabka jabiyey

**Experiencer** = dareen kiciye

**Wiilashu** waxa ay maqleen onkod daran

**Axmed** ayaa u carooday baraha

**Recipient** = gudoome

Maxamed baa buug siiyey **odayga**

**Benefictiv** = faa'iide

Xasan baa beer u falay **lo'da**

Xasan baa cunto u kariyey **Sahra**

**Instrument** = aalad ama qalab

**Furuuhu** ma furi karo qufulka

**Theme** = mowduuc ama arrin

**Caanuha** waxa ay ku jirtaa qaboojiyaha

**Patient** = la yeele

Sahra baa karisay **cuntada** macaan

**Stimulus** = carin,ama kicin

**Tuugu** wuxuu eegayaas askariga

**Location(position)** = meel ama goob

Xasan waxa uu aaday **dugsiga**

**Source** = isha ama xigasho

Xaliimo waxa ay guriga ka soo gashay **daaqadda**

Biyuhu waxay ka yimaadeen webiga

**Goal** = hadaf ama ujeedo

Cabdi waxa uu goor hore aaday **suuqa**

Siraad waxa ay carruurta u kaxasay **leexada**

**Path** = dariiq ama jid am waddo

Dadka wuxuu ku qulqulayaa **wadada**

Darawalku wuxuu ku kexeyey **waddo weyn**

**Accompaniment** = wehel ama la jirid

Maryama waxa ay israaceen **hooyadeed**

Maryama waxa ay la socotay **wiilal**

3 Three arguemnts

2.3. Build two simple Somali semtences with three argument: **a subject and two objects**, but no oblique and no adjunct.

#### Grupp 4

1. • Cali waxa uu hooyadii siiyaa lacag
2. Dahabo waxa ay alaabta saareysaa miiska.

#### Grupp 2

- Hooyo waxa ay dadka waraabisa biyo

Macallimaddu waxa ay carruurta bartaa Afsoomaaliga.

#### Grupp 4+

- Ali waxa uu caruurtiisa **u soo iibiyey** dhar.

Macalinku waxa uu ardayda **u dhigaya** cashar.

#### Grupp 5

- Ninku waxa uu siiyaa geela caws

Wiil baa waraqad **u diray** gabadh

#### Grupp 3

**Baruhu** waxa uu **ardayda** siinayaa **qalinka**

**Ninku** waxa uu **xaaskiisa** siinayaa **lacagta**

4 subject & complement(s), but no adjunct

2.4. Build two simple Somali sentences with **a subject, one object and one oblique**, but no adjunct.

#### Grupp 3

- Jaamac waxa uu **Caasha u diray howshan.**

Maamulaha waxa uu **ardyga ka gudoomay warbixintan.**

#### Grupp 4

- Daahir waxa uu cashirka **ku qoray buuggiisa.**
- Cabdul xawaaladda ayuu hooyadii lacag **ugu diray.** 4 argument  
SUBJ OBL OBL OBJ

#### Grupp 2

- Gabadhu waxa ay cunto **u karisaa** carruurta.

Wiilku waxaa uu kubbad **la ciyaraa** kurayda.

#### Grupp 4+

- Waasuge waxa uu kubad **la ciyaaray** saaxiibadiis.

Macalinku waxa uu ardeydi **u diray** leylis adag.

### Grupp 5

•

1. Wiilku wuxuu gabadha **u diray** lacagtaas.

2. Barahu wuxuu ardayda **u diray** shaqo guri.

## 5 One complement and one adjunct

2.5. Build two simple Somali sentences with **one oblique and one adjunct**. Subject & object may be added if suitable.

### Grupp 3

Anigu waxaan ciyaara kubbadda cagta *aroortii*.

Aroor walba ilkaha ayaan cadaydaa.

### Grupp 4

1. • Caasho ayaa lacag **ugu deeqday** Falastiin **shalay**.

2. Maxamuud waxa uu caruurta xisaab ugu dhigaa Jaamacadda Lafoole.

### Grupp 2

• Gabadhu waxa ay alaabta u qaadaysaa magaalada Muqdisho si ay u iibiso.

Wiilku waxa uu ciyaara kubbadda cagta maalin walba.

### Grupp 5

1. Hooyo waxa ay u dirtay lacag shalay odayga buka.

2. Aabe ayaa u diray dhaan reerka maanta.

## 6 One complement & two adjuncts

2.6. Build two simple Somali sentences with **one object and two adjuncts**. A subject may be added if suitable, but no oblique.

### Grupp 3

• • Ninka dukaanlah ahi waxa **uu iibiyaa alaab taala magaalada bannaankeeda**.

- Macalimiinta **dugsiyadu waxay qoreen arday badan saaka aroortii** .

#### Grupp 4

- Ibraahim aroortii ayuu qashinka ku tuuraa godka.
- Dhaqtarku shalay ayuu bukaanka ku booqday gurigiisa.

#### Grupp 2

- Dadka baahiyaha gaarka qabaa waxay unkeen kacdoon cusub maalmahan danbe.

Baraha wiilku subaxa hore ayuu casharka ku diyaarsadaa qolka dhexdiisa.

#### Grupp 4+

- Olow waxa uu (**shalay**) **kubad** (OB) ku ciyaaray (**garoonka Jeenyo**).

Macalin Morgan Nilsson ayaa (**si habsami leh**) (**sabti walba**) u dhiga **Somaliska Syntax** (OB).

#### Grupp 4+

- Faarax waxa uu shalay kasoo gatay maktabada buugaag.

Buux waxa uu maanta kasoo qaatay shirkada qoraaladii.

#### Grupp 5

1.Hooyo waxay wiilka ula carartay garoonka shalay galab.

Hooyo waxay canuga u dirtay xannaanada maanta.

### 7 Well-formedness

2.7. Translate the three sentences in section 2.5 (Well-formedness) into Somali. Give one more Somali example of each kind of ill-formed sentence, where two should still be grammatically well-formed, but odd.

#### Grupp 3

- I am two years older from my sister. *Labo sano ayaan ka soo waynahay walaashay*.

*Ex: Sadex baan bilood ka hor dhashay waalidiintay.*

**I am two years older than my mother.** *Labo sano ayaan ka waynahay hooyaday.*

*Ex: Labo sano ayaan jirey markii aan dhashay.*

I am two years smarter than my brother. *Labo sano ayaan ka xariifsanahay walaalkay.*

*Ex: Dhawr sano ayaan dadka oo dhan ka sareeyaa.*

#### Grupp 4

- I am two years older from my sister. = Laba sano ayaan ka wayn yahay walaasheey.

Ungrammatical Somali example: **Ardaydu ayaa ay baxday/baxeen.**

I am two years older than my mother. = Laba sano ayaan ka waynahay hooyadeey.

Gramamtically well-formed Somali example: **100 jeer ayaan wax kuu sheegay!**

I am two years smarter than my brother = Laba sano ayaan ka qatarsanahay walaalkay.

Gramamtically well-formed Somali example: **Axmed waxa uu cabay kaniini.**

#### Grupp 2

- Wuxaan ka weyn ahay laba sanno walaashay

anigu waxa aan walaashay ka weyn ahay laba sanno.

Anigu waxa aan laba sanno ka weyn ahay hooyaday

Waxa aan laba sanno ka caqli badan ahay walaakay

Walaalkay waxa aan ka caqli badan ahay laba sanno

Anigu waxa aan ka caqli badan ahay laba sanno marka la eego walaalkay

#### Grupp 4+

- I am two years older **from** my sister.

Wuxaan labo sano **u jiraa** walaashay.

I am two years **older** than my **mother**.

Wuxaan labo sano **ka weynahay** hooyaday.

I am two years **smarter** than my brother.

Waxaan labo sano **ka maskax badanahay** walaalkey.

Examples:

Geele **waxay iibinayeen** dukaanka

Waxaan **ka hor** dhashay **aabahay**

Waxaan orday labo kiilo **garam**

## Grupp 5

1. I am two years **older from** my sister

Labo sano baan ka weynahay walaashey

Walaashay laba sano ka weyni(**odd**)

2. I am two years **older** than my **mother**

labo sano baan hooyaday ka weynahay

Anigu hooyaday laba sano ka weyni(**odd**)

Waxaan labo sanno ka weynahay hooyaday.

3. I am two **years smarter** than my brother

Labo sanno baan ka caqli badnahay walaalkay

Anigu labo sanno baan ka xariifsanhay walaalkay

Laba sano ka caqli badni walaalkay(**odd**)

## Impersonal clauses

*Dabkii wuu iftiimayaan*

*Cuntadii way karsoomaysaa*

*Barafkii wuu dhalaalayaa*

## Indefinite agent clauses

irrealis / realis clause

No specific referent / there is a specific referent, but not revealed

*Guriga waa la joogaa. Joogaa is a realis verb.*

*Ruux baan la hadlayn Hadlayn is an irrealis verb.*

*Jimmy Åkesson waa **hogaamiyaha xagjirka**. The bold part has specific referent to subject NP.*

*Khaladka waa la sameeyey. The one who make the mistake is unknown.*

*Kursi waa lagu fariistaa.*

*Albaabka waa la furay. realis clause.*

*Shaqada waxaa la rajaynayaa in la bilaabo 8da subaxnimo. irrealis clause.*

*Cuntadii waa la cunayaa*

*Cuntadii la ma cunayo*

*Waa la hadlay.*

*Daarta qof baa dhisay.*

*Mid baa dhisay guriga.*

*Ruux baa halkaa maraya.*

*Cid baa khaladka samaysay.*

*Ruux waalan baan arkay,*

*Cidna albaabka ha ka furin.*

*Qofna ha u joojinin.*

# Unit 8

## Lexical Entries & Argument Structure (< 3)

### 8.1 Lexical Entries

The **lexicon** is the mental storage of a speaker's vocabulary and certain grammatical information about the individual lexemes.

A **lexical item** is an individual lexeme in the lexicon.

A **lexical entry** is an individual lexeme in the lexicon together with all the necessary information about that lexeme, e.g. pronunciation, meaning, word class (or syntactic category), irregular inflection (e.g. *il*, pl. *indho*), as well as syntactic information about how it can be combined with other words into phrases and clauses, such as information about the argument structure of many lexemes.

### 8.2 Arguments and Adjuncts

In the lexicon, every verb needs to be specified for its argument structure. Both the arguments' semantic roles and their grammatical relation to the verb need to be specified, e.g.

*u diraa* + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL + RECIPIENT/OBL

*Wuxuu tacsi u diray ehelada ...*

*siiyaa* + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL + RECIPIENT/OBL

*... Turkiga ayaa deeq waxbarasho siinaya 500 arday sannad walba...*

However, this clause contains one more NP: *sannad walba*. This NP is not an argument, since it is not an obligatory NP. Non-obligatory NPs are called **adjuncts**.

Consequently, noun phrases in a clauses are either **arguments** (obligatory NPs) or **adjuncts** (optional NPs).

**Arguments** are specified in the lexicon, while **adjuncts** are not. **Arguments** are part of the fixed syntactic pattern of the verb, while **adjuncts** are added freely to clauses.

#### 8.2.1 Clauses with an adjunct

Time

*Cali waa uu soconayaa **hadda**.*  
*Caasho waxay **xilliga quraacda** cunaysaa tufaax.*  
*Odaygu wuxuu **shalay** arkay libaax.*  
*Maamuluhu wuxuu **sannadkan** dugsiga qorayaa arday badan.*  
*Xasan waxa uu **saaka** buug amaahiyay Cali.*  
*Dayr baa aynu ku jirnaa **bishan**.*  
*Ninku wuu **kacay markiiba**.*  
*Ninku baabuur buu arkay **shalay**.*  
*Kooxdu koob bay qaadday **sannadkan**.*

Xasan wuu qoslaa **mar walba**.

Xasan wuu heesay **maalin hore**.

Xasan waxa uu dilayaa libaax **berri subax**.

Baruhu wuxuu xisaab baraa ardayda **xilliga fasaxa**.

Xasan wuxuu u orday dugsiga **shalay galab**.

Cali waa uu yimid **shalay**.

Hinda **hadda** waa ay u ordaysaa qarankeeda.

Cabdulahi waxa uu **subaxdii** bartaa Afsoomaali.

Gurigan waxaa dhisay walaalkay **sanadkii hore**.

Hooyadu waxay ilmeheeda **had iyo goor** dareensiisaa jacayl.

Place

*Cali wuxuu **daaradda** ku fadhiyaa kursi.*  
*Axmed kubbad ayuu ku ciyaaray **garoonka***

Manner

*Kooxdu way carartay **si dhakhso ah**.*

Faarax **maqas** ayuu **degdeg ugu** jaray ubaxa.

Background

*Ilmahana sheeko ayuu u sheekeeyay **isagoo qiiraysan**.*

Adjunct NPs may also consist of a whole subordinate clause

Dhakhtarku sariir buu seexiyaa bukaanka **marka uu daweynayo.**

### 8.3 Arguments with prepositions

Some **arguments** are connected to the verb through a preposition that points to the oblique argument. They are a necessary part of the verb's argument structure because they are a natural part of the situation that the verb describes.

*Dawladda ayaa foostadii biyaha ah ku iibsan jirtay laba doollar...*

Certain verbs may also be used with two prepositions and two obliques.

*Dad baa beero lacag kaga iibsan doona dawladda.*

**Adjuncts**, on the other hand, do not have any immediate connection to the specific situation that the verb describes. Adjuncts can be freely added to most verbs and clauses. Very common adjuncts are those that express **time**, **place** and **manner**, e.g.

*Sannadkii 1947kii ayaa la dilay Sheekh Bashir.*

OBL	SBJ	OBL	(SYNTACTIC CONSTITUENT)
<b>ADJUNCT</b>		ARGUM. ARGUMENT	(RELATION TO THE PREDICATE VERB)
TIME	AGENT	PATIENT	(SEMANTIC ROLE)

With certain verbs, however, also time, place and manner are obligatory arguments. E.g. with verbs of motion such as *yimaaddaa*, *tagaa*, place is obligatory, hence it is an argument.

**Arguments** are obligatorily, they are required by the verb.

**Adjuncts** are optional, they are not required by the verb.

In Somali, both **arguments** and **adjuncts** are **oblique** noun phrases, i.e., they are not marked grammatically, neither by morphological affixes, nor by word order or any syntactical particles.

## 8.4 Valence and Transitivity

The **valence** of a verb is the number of arguments that the verb takes without any preposition, e.g. the valence of *diraa* is TWO (SBJ+OBL), whereas the valence of *siiyaa* is THREE (SBJ+OBL+OBL) and the valence of *hurdaa* is ONE (SBJ).<sup>2</sup>

There are three kinds of transitivity.

**Intransitive** verbs have the valence value 1 = 1 argument which is always the subject,  
e.g. *hurdaa*

**Transitive** verbs have the valence value 2 = 2 arguments without any preposition,  
e.g. *keenaa*

**Ditransitive** verbs have the valence value 3 = 3 arguments without any preposition,  
e.g. *siiyaa*

An **intransitive** verb is a verb that only takes a subject, but no oblique.

*hurdaa* + THEME/SBJ

*Sahro way hurudaa.*

*ordaa* + AGENT/SBJ

*Sahro way ordaysaa.*

A **transitive** verb is a verb that requires one oblique argument without a preposition, in addition to the subject.

*diraa* + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL

*Axmed waxaa uu diray warqad.*

A **ditransitive** verb is a verb that requires two oblique arguments without a preposition, in addition to the subject.

*siiyaa* + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL + RECIPIENT/OBL

*... Turkiga ayaa deeq waxbarasho siinaya 500 arday sannad walba...*

Some languages don't always explicitly express all the arguments, even if they are semantically at hand in the situation that is described by a clause.

---

<sup>2</sup> Some linguists also include oblique arguments of prepositions in the valence, not only the obliques without prepositions. This way of treating valence may be referred to as SEMANTIC VALENCE.

English and Swedish can suppress (not specify) the object if it is not relevant to the situation, e.g. *I am eating*. Somali, on the other hand, tends to insert the indefinite word *wax* in such contexts, e.g. *Wax baan cunayaa*.

Actually, when an oblique is suppressed in Somali, i.e. not expressed explicitly by any word, that oblique is very specific and well established through the preceding context. This is connected to the fact that Somali doesn't use or even have clitic (unstressed) 3rd person oblique pronouns corresponding to English *her, him, it, them* or Swedish *honom, henne, den, det, dem*. Therefore, when a transitive Somali verb is used in a clause without an oblique, that absence needs to be interpreted as expressing a specific oblique, and therefore translated into English with one of the oblique pronouns, e.g. *Maryan ma aragtay? Haa, waan arkay.* 'Yes, I saw **her**.'

Furthermore, languages like Italian and Arabic can suppress (not explicitly have a word for) the subject, e.g. *Vengo*. English, Swedish and Somali, on the other hand, usually have a subject word, at least a clitic (short, unstressed) subject pronoun (*aan, aad, uu, ay, la, aannu, aynu, aydin*), e.g. *I'm coming; Jag kommer; Waan imanayaa*. Somali can however suppress the subject in questions and negative statements, e.g. *Cali ma aragtay? Maya, ma arkin*.

This kind of absence of pronouns is generally referred to as **pro-drop**.

These variations are so called **surface variations**. The semantic structure is stable, but the syntactic "surface" structures exhibit variation.

#### 8.4.1 Some other intransitive verbs

Cali waa uu **soconayaa**.

Cali waa uu **fadhiyaa**.

Ninku wuu **kacay**

Kooxdu way **carartay**

Xasan wuu **qoslaa**.

Xasan wuu **heesaa / gabyaa**.

Cali waa uu **yimid**.

Hinda waa ay **ordaysaa**.

#### 8.4.2 Some other transitive verbs

Caasho waxay **cunaysaa** tufaax.

Odaygu wuxuu **arkay** Libaax.

Ninku baabuur buu **arkay**

Kooxdu koob bay **qaadday**

Xasan waxa uu **dilayaa** libaax.

Xasan waxa uu **qoray** sheeko.

Cabdulahi waxa uu **bartaa** Afsoomaali.

Gurigan waxaa **dhisay** walaalkay.

#### 8.4.3 Some other ditransitive verbs

agent/causer – theme/patient – beneficiary/recipient/goal

Xasan waxa uu **buug** **amaahiyay** Cali.

Baruhu wuxuu xisaab **baraa** ardayda.

Dhakhtarku sariir buu **seexiyaa** bukaanka.

Hooyadu waxay **ilmeheeda** **dareensiisaa** **jacayl**.

Morgan waxa uu **dadka** **baraa** **naxwaha**.

Morgan waxa uu **na** **baraa** **naxwaha**.

*Maamuluuhu wuxuu dugsiga qorayaa arday badan.*

*Geeddi wuxuu gabadhiisa tusay sawir.*

#### 8.4.4 Intransitive verbs with a prepositional argument

Cali waa uu **u yimid** reerkiiisa.

**Dayr** baa aynu **ku** **jiirnaa**.

Axmed wuxuu **u qoslay** **gabadha**

Bukaanku wuxuu **ku** **seexdaa** **sariirta**.

## Grupp 5

**ordi**

Xasan wuxuu **u orday** dugsiga.

## Grupp 4

**Intransitive & oblique** :- Cali waa uu **u yimid** reerkiisa.

### 8.4.5 Transitive verbs with a prepositional argument

Ha iloobin in aad buugaagtan **u celisid** maktabada Lund.

Ilmahana sheeko ayuu **uga sheekeeyay**

3.5 Think of one Somali verbs that is **transitive**, but also takes an **oblique** argument with a **preposition**. Write a simple sentence with this verb. Don't choose a verb that has been mentioned in the text above!

## Grupp 3

Ha iloobin in aad buuggaagtan **u celisid** maktabada.

## Grupp 2

- Axmed Kubbud ayuu **ku ciyaaray** garoonka

## Grupp 5

**diri**

Sahra waxa ay lacag **u dirtay** bankiga.

## Grupp 4

**Transitive & oblique** :- Faarax **maqas** ayuu **ku jaray** ubaxa.

### 8.5 Valence Alternations

Another type of argument variation can be observed between different closely related verbs, but here the alternations express **semantic differences** between the different related verbs.

### 8.5.3 Causative verbs

*Biyuhu way karayaan.*                            *karaa + THEME/SBJ*

THEME

*Iyagu waxay karinayaan biyaha.*                    *kariyaa + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL*

AGENT    THEME

This type of verb pairs are based on the addition of the suffix *-i-*.

The simple, basic verb is **intransitive**, the derived verb with *-i-* is **transitive**.

The simple, basic verb expresses a situation where there is no agent involved in the event, whereas the derived verb with the *-i-* suffix expresses a situation where there is an agent involved in the event. The agent causes the water to boil, and therefore the *-i-* suffix is referred to as a **causative** affix.

English and Swedish differ a lot from Somali, since the same verb is often used in both meanings and both syntactic constructions.

*The water is boiling.*                                    *Vattnet kokar.*

*They are boiling the water.*                            *De kokar vattnet.*

English causative verbs are often the same as the non-causative counterparts.

*The snow is melting.*                                    THEME/SBJ

*The sunshine is melting the snow.* CAUSER/SBJ + THEME/OBL

*John is walking.*    AGENT/SBJ

*John is walking the dog.*                                    CAUSER/SBJ + AGENT/OBL

i.e. John is causing the dog to walk.

**dhalaala:**    THEME/SBJ

**dhalaaliyaa:**    CAUSER/SBJ + THEME/OBL

*Barafku waa uu dhalaalayaa.*

*Iftiinka qorraxdu wixa uu dhalaalinayaa barafka.*

Somali **causative** verbs may also be formed through the use of the morpheme *-sii-*.

**socdaa:**    AGENT/SBJ

**socodsiyyaa:**    CAUSER/SBJ + AGENT/OBL

*Jon waa uu soconayaa.*

*Jon wixa uu socodsiinayaa eyga.*

In the second sentence, the dog is obviously walking, but for John we don't know for sure whether he is actually walking or not.

*John is walking the dog* = *Joon wuxuu lugaysiinayaa eyga.*  
*John is walking* = *Joon wuu lugaynayaa.*

The verb “walking” has the same form as transitive as well as intransitive in English. But the Somali verbs have different forms: “lugaynayaa” is an intransitive verb and we are adding *-sii-* to make it a transitive verb.

*The sunshine is melting the snow* = *Ilayska cadceeddu wuxuu dhalaalinayaa barafka.*  
*The snow is melting* = *Barafku wuu dhalaalayaa.*

The verb “melting” has the same form as transitive and intransitive in English, but the Somali translations have different verbs: “dhalaalayaa” is an intransitive verb and we add *-i-* to make it transitive.

### 8.5.2 Anticausative verbs

A less frequent way of creating this kind of pairs of verbs in Somali is the suffix *-m-*, but this suffix has the opposite effect, it changes a transitive verb into an intransitive.

*Ardayga* *ayaa bilaabay waxbarashadiisa.*      *bilaabaa + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL*  
AGENT    THEME

*Casharku* *wuu bilaabmay.*      *bilaabmaa + THEME/SBJ*  
THEME

The simple, basic verb is **transitive**, the derived verb with *-m-* is **intransitive**. The derived intransitive verb removes the agent from the event, which means that there is no longer anybody who causes the event. Therefore the *-m-* is called an **anticausative** affix.

### 8.5.3 Autobenefactive verbs

Another suffix that changes the argument structure of a clause is the autobenefactive affix *-st-/–sad-/–san–*. The effect of this affix is that it merges the agent and the beneficiary into one and the same argument.

The predicate *u kariyaa* requires three arguments:  
AGENT/SBJ + PATIENT/OBL + BENEFICIARY/OBL.

*Iyadu*   *walaasheed bay u karinaysaa hilibka.*  
AGENT BENEFICIARY    PATIENT

The autobenefactive verb *karsadaa* only requires two arguments:  
AGENT&BENEFICIARY/SBJ + PATIENT/OBL.

*Iyadu way karsanaysaa hilibka.*  
AGENT&BENEFICIARY PATIENT

### 8.5.4 More verb pairs with valence alternations

3.1. Translate the sentences (13a,b), (16a,b) and (17a,c) on page 71. Explain the structural difference between the two sentences in English and Somali.

**Transitivt verb utan objekt: skriver (agent, patient)**

Svenska, engelska: utan patient

Somaliska gärna *wax*

**Transitivt och intransitivt verb**

ofta samma på engelska,

ibland på svensk,

aldrig på somaliska

Bill waa uu hadlayaa. (magudbe)

Bill is writing an autobiography.

*writing* AGENT/SBJ, PATIENT/OBL

Bill is writing Ø.

*writing* AGENT/SBJ, PATIENT/Ø

Bill is writing something.

*writing* AGENT/SBJ, PATIENT/OBL

Bill waxa uu qorayaa taariikh-nololeed.

*qorayaa* FALE/YEELE, PATIENT/MAYEELE

Bill *wax* baa uu qorayaa.

*qorayaa* FALE/YEELE, PATIENT/MAYEELE

Bill warqadda ma qorayaa?

Haa, Bill wuu qorayaa.

Yaa warqadda qoraya?

Bill baa qoraya.

#### Grupp 2

- (13) **a:** Bill is writing an autobiography. = Bill waxa uu qorayaa taariikh-nololeedkiisa

**b:** Bill is writing = Bill wuu qorayaa

the verb “is writing” has a same form in transitive and an intransitive in english. In somali “wuu qorayaa” is not a full sentence “*wax* buu qorayaa” is better because “qorayaa” is FAL GUDBE.

#### Grupp 5

3.1 13a. Bill waxa uu qorayaa taariikh nololeed. gudbe

13b. Bill waa uu qorayaa. gudbe

Bill waa uu ordayaan magudbe

Sharraxaad: 13a. waa fal gudbe sida uu af ingiriiska ugu yahay (transitive), balse 13b waa fal magudbe(intransitive), therefore, both Somali and English sentences they are same.

## Grupp 4

(13) a. Bill is writing an autobiography. = Bill waxa uu qorayaa taariikh nololeed.

Writing+AGENT=SUBLEKT+THEM=OBJEKT

b. Bill is writing. = Bill waa uu qorayaa.

Writing+AGENT

Translating tex 13.a is quite well and matches correct to the somali sentence, but unfortunately 13.b is not as perfect as 13.a somali translation needs the word “wax” so that it can be a sentence with understandable meaning.

Verbet är intransitivt i den här meningen och därför finns ingen men kan läsa den mellan raderna i somaliska texten och ibland använder man ”wax”, ”Bill waxbuu qorayaa”.

(16) a. John is walking the dog. = John waxa uu la soconayaa eyga.

walking+AGENT=SUBLEKT+THEM=OBJEKT

b. John is walking. = John waa uu soconayaa.

walking+AGENT

16.a needs the preposition “la” otherwise the somali sentence is incomplete which actually can cause confusion.

(17) a. The sunshine is melting the snow. = Ilayska qorraxdu waxa uu dhalaaliynayaa barafka.

dhalaalaa+AGENT=SUBLEKT+THEM=OBJEKT

c. The snow is melting. = Barafku waa uu dhalaalayaa.

dhalaalaa+AGENT

Both the english and somali sentences match well and they have no problem to worry about.

In examples 13, 16 and 17 we have a pair of sentences with the same verb where one of the sentences contains a verb with two arguments (**transitive**) while the other has only one argument (**intransitive**).

## Grupp 3

Ninkii ayaa **qoday** ceelkii.  
Ceelkii waa **qodmay**.

Dabku waa uu **huraya**.  
Iyagu waxa ay **hurinayaan** dabka.

transitive: *galaa*  
ditransitive: *geliyaa* (causative)

*Aden wuu galayaa guriga.*  
*Aden waxa uu gelinayaa carruurta guriga.*

transitive: *leexiyaa* (causative)  
intransitive: *leexdaa* (autobenefactive)

*Waasuge wuxuu leexinayaa baabuurka.*  
*Waasuge wuu leexanayaa.*

intransitive: *daalaa*  
transitive: *daaliyaa* (causative)

*Dameerku wuu daalay.*  
*Raage wuxuu daalinayaa dameerka.*

transitive: *xiraa*  
intransitive: *xirmaa* (anticausative)

*Waaberi wuxuu xiray albaabka.*  
*Albaabku wuu xirmay.*

## Grupp 5

### 3.8. **toosi, tukasho, kici**

Xasan	wuxuu	kiciyey	awrkii
-------	-------	---------	--------

(transitive) fal gudbe. Agent=subj + kiciyaa+theme=obj

Awrkii	wuu	kacay
--------	-----	-------

(intransitive) magudbe. Agent=subj + kacaa

Carruurtu	way	toosaan
-----------	-----	---------

(intransitive) magudbe. Theme=subj + toosaa

Iyadu	waxay	toosinaysaa	carruurta
-------	-------	-------------	-----------

(transitive). Agent=subj + toosisaa + theme =obj

Caasha way tukataa  
(intransitive).

Iyadu waxay tujinaysaa dumarka  
(transitive). Agent=subj + tujisaa + theme =obj

Basic verb is transitive, derived verb with -i- is intransitive

Furuhu albaabka buu furay  
(transitive), fal gudbe. Agent=subj + furayaa + theme=obj

Alaabku wuu furmay  
(intransitive), fal magudbe

Albaabku wuu furmayaa maalin walba.  
Theme=subj + furmaa.

Cali albaabka ayuu xirayaa  
(transitive), fal gudbe. Agent=subj + xiraa + theme=obj

Albaabku wuu xirmay  
(intransitive), fal magudbe. Theme=subj + xirmaa.

Basic verb is transitive, derived verb with -m- is intransitive.

#### Grupp 4

Cali waa uu dhoofayaa Agent = subj+dhoofayaa (**intransitive**)

Axmed waxa uu dhoofinayaa Cali Agent=subj+dhoofiyaa+theme=obj (**transitive**)

Bakhtigu waa uu urayaa Theme=subj+uraa (**intransitive**)

Carruurtu waxa ay urinayaa bakhtiga Agent=subj+uriyaa+theme=obj (**transitive**)

Warfaa albaabka ayuu furay. Agent=subj+furay+theme=obj (**transitive**)

Albaabku waa uu furmay Theme=subj+furaa (**intransitive**)

## 8. Terminology

Intransitive verb Fal magudbe

Transitive verb Fal gudbe

Ditransitive verb Fal labagudbe

## 8. Additional reading

Read: Kroeger (2005), Chapter 5, pages 66–83.

## 8. Old Exercises

3.1. Translate the sentences (13a,b), (16a,b) and (17a,c) on page 71. Explain the structural difference between the two sentences in English and Somali.

3.2 Think of two Somali verbs that are **intransitive**. Write a simple sentence with each verb. Don't choose verbs that have been mentioned in the text above!

3.3 Think of two Somali verbs that are **transitive**. Write a simple sentence with each verb. Don't choose verbs that have been mentioned in the text above!

3.4 Think of two Somali verbs that are **ditransitive**. Write a simple sentence with each verb. Don't choose verbs that have been mentioned in the text above!

3.5 Think of one Somali verbs that is **intransitive**, but also takes an **oblique** argument with a preposition. Write a simple sentence with this verb. Don't choose a verb that has been mentioned in the text above!

3.6 Think of one Somali verbs that is **transitive**, but also takes an **oblique** argument with a preposition. Write a simple sentence with this verb. Don't choose a verb that has been mentioned in the text above!

3.7 Repeat all the eight sentences in 3.2–3.5 and add an adjunct to each sentence.

3.8 Give three **pairs of verbs** where one is transitive and the other is intransitive. Two pairs should make use of the morpheme *-i-*, and one pair should make use of the morpheme *-m-*. Write short sentences with each verb, 6 sentences in total. For each sentence, write in parentheses if it is transitive or intransitive. Don't choose verbs that have been mentioned in the text above!

3.9 Choose three verbs that you have not mentioned before. Write down their argument structure according to the pattern:

*u diraa + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL + RECIPIENT/OBL*

Also write a simple sentence that supports your argument structure template.

## Discussion 2022

### Argument structure

*u diraa + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL + RECIPIENT/OBL*

Geedi waxa uu warqad u diraa waalidkiis.

*u hayaa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl*

Isagu wuxuu dharka u hayaa ilmaha.

u jaraa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl

Isagu wuxuu tikidka u jaraa kooxda

ku caawiyaa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl ??? adjunct

Iyagu waxa ay guryahooda ku caawiyaan indhoolayaasha. (tvetydigt)

Iyagu waxa ay shaqadooda kugu caawiyaan indhoolayaasha. guryahooda

u tebiyaa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl

Wuxuu war u tebiyaa xafiis ku yaal telefishinka qaranka.

faraa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl

Wuxuu bogaadin u faray hooyada u dooday dumarka.

qaybiyaa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient=obl

Wuxuu raashin u qaybiyaa dadka ku jira xeryaha qaxootiga mar walba.

Siham waxa ay shaqada ku tagtaa gaari.

Morgan waxa uu saaxiibkiis u keenay hadiyad

Maxammed waxa uu walaalkiis u hibeeyay guri.

Wiilka waxa uu u iibanayaa gabdha ubax.

Dhirta waxay u jaraan reerkooda.

Waxay dharka u labisaan caruurtooda.

## 8. New Exercises

A. Try to come up with additional examples of derived 1) causative verbs, 2) anticausative verbs, 3) autobenefactive verbs. Illustrate the use of these verbs by contrasting them with a more basic verb with almost the same meaning.

B. Analyse the following sentences.

Mark the sentence constituents:

Subject Particle Predicate Oblique

Indicate the semantic role of each of the NPs.

Also decide whether they are (obligatory) **arguments** or (optional) **adjuncts** by putting adjuncts in parentheses.

Finally give the argument structure pattern for the clause.

E.g.

Geedi waxa uu (shalay) warqad u diray waalidkiis.  
agent time theme recipient

*u diraa* + AGENT/SBJ + THEME/OBL + RECIPIENT/OBL

Isagu wuxuu dharka u hayaa ilmaha.

Isagu wuxuu tikipka u jaraa kooxda

Iyagu waxa ay guryahooda ku caawiyaan indhoolayaasha.

Iyagu waxa ay shaqadooda kugu caawiyaan indhoolayaasha guryahooda.

Wuxuu war u tebiyaa xafiis ku yaal telefishinka qaranka.

Wuxuu bogaadin u faray hooyada u dooday dumarka.

Wuxuu raashin u qaybiyaa dadka ku jira xeryaha qaxootiga mar walba.

Siham waxa ay shaqada ku tagtaa gaari.

Morgan waxa uu saaxiibkiis u keenay hadiyad

Maxammed waxa uu walaalkiis u hibeyay guri.

Wiilka waxa uu u iibanayaa gabdha ubax.

Dhirta waxay u jaraan reerkooda.

Waxay dharka u labisaan caruurtooda.

## Suggested solutions 2025

### simple verb:

1. Wiilkii yaraa wuu naxay. 'The little boy became scared.'

Wiilkii yaraa ayaa naxay. 'The little boy became scared.'

SUBJ

experiencer

2. **causative verb:**

Wiilkii yaraa ayaan ka **nix-i-yay**. 'I made the little boy become scared.'

oblique SUBJ

experiencer causer

### anticausative verb

1. Albaabkii waa uu furmay.

### autobenefactive verb

1. Shaahii ayuu karsaday.

Mark the sentence constituents:

Indicate the semantic role of each of the NPs.

**put adjuncts in parentheses.**

Finally give the argument structure pattern for the clause.

Geedi waxa uu (shalay) warqad u diray waalidkiis.

agent time theme recipient

*u diraa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl*

Isagu wuxuu dharka u hayaa ilmaha.

Subject Particle Oblique Predicate Oblique

Agent theme recipient

*u hayaa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl*

Isagu	wuxuu	tikidka	u jaraa	kooxda
Subject	Particle	Oblique	Predicate	Oblique
Agent		theme		recipient

*u jaraa + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl*

Iyagu	waxa ay	guryahooda	ku caawiyaan	indhoolayaasha.
Subject	Particle	Oblique	Predicate	Oblique
Agent		theme		recipient

*Ku caawiyaan + agent/sbj + theme/obl + recipient/obl*

Iyagu	waxa ay	shaqadooda	ku caawiyaan	indhoolayaasha	guryahooda.
Subject	Particle		Predicate	Oblique	
agent		theme		beneficiary	theme

Wuxuu	war	u tebiyaa	[xafiis ku yaal telefishinka qaranka].
particle+subj	oblique	predicate	oblique
agent		theme	goal

Wuxuu	bogaadin	u faray	hooyada	u dooday	dumarka.
particle+suject	oblique		predicate	oblique	predicate
agent		theme		theme	
beneficiary					

Wuxuu	raashin	u qaybiyaa	dadka ku jira xeryaha qaxootiga mar walba.
particle + subject	oblique	predicate	oblique
agent	theme	u qaybiyaa+beneficiar	

Siham waxa ay shaqada ku tagtaa gaari.

Subject particle+s oblique khabar oblique  
agent goal instrument

Morgan waxa uu saaxiibkiis u keenay hadiyad.

Subject particle subject oblique khabar oblique  
agent (agent) recipient theme

Maxammed waxa uu walaalkiis u hibeyay guri.

Subject particle subject oblique khabar oblique  
agent ( agent) beneficent theme

Wiilka waxa uu u iibanayaa gabdha ubax.

Subject particle subject khabar oblique oblique  
agent agent recipient theme  
beneficiary beneficiary

Dhirta waxay u jaraan reerkooda.

oblique particle+subject khabar oblique  
patient agent beneficiary

Waxay dharka u labisaan caruurtooda.

particle+subject oblique khabar oblique  
agent theme beneficiary

# Unit 9

## Valency-changing operations (< 13)

### 9.1 Valency changes

The valency of a verb are the terms of a verb, i.e. the **subject**, **object** and **object<sub>2</sub>**, but not the oblique arguments (usually accompanied by a preposition).

Basic verb are intransitive, transitive or ditransitive.

intransitive, e.g. *ordaa*

transitive, e.g. *cunaa*

ditransitive, e.g. *siiyaa*

Many languages have widely used grammatical forms or constructions that serve to change the valence patterns of verbs.

### 9.1 The Passive

A passive sentence has an 'agent' or 'causer' that is in the background, not so important, maybe not mentioned, they are there semantically, as part of the event.

But *furmay* doesn't include a doer/agent/causer, so therefore it is not passive. If there is someone, but we don't want to draw any attention to that person, *la furay* is used. But that is the active form of the verb.

Therefore Somali doesn't have passive forms of verbs, only the indefinite subject pronoun *la*.

Somaliska har inte passivum.

Formerna som du citerar kallas intransitiva.

De uttrycksmedel som somaliskan har för att återge andra språks passivum är

- Satser med det indefinit subjektspronomen *la*
- Satser med aktivt verb men med subjektet placerat i slutet av satsen
- Så kallade antikausativa verb med suffixet *-m-/an-*, *bilaabmaa*, *bilaabantaa*

Many languages have a passive form of the verb (Sw. *skrivas* ‘write.INF.PASS’, *skrivas* ‘write.PRS.PASS’, *skrevs* ‘write.PST.PASS’) or a passive construction (En. *be written* (INF.PASS), *is written* (PRS.PASS), *was written* (PST.PASS)).

Transitive verbs can be used in the passive in order to shift the word order and thereby shift the topic/focus relation between the agent and the patient/theme of the clause.

*Läkaren opererade flickan (för blindtarmen).*

agent	patient
SUBJECT	OBJECT

*Flickan blev opererad av läkaren.*

patient	agent
SUBJECT	OBLIQUE

The passive can also be used in order to not reveal the identity of the agent.

*Flickan blev opererad (för blindtarmen).*

patient
SUBJECT

Passivization therefore changes a transitive verb (SUBJ=agent + OBJ=patient/theme) into an intransitive one (SUBJ=patient/theme).

Somali doesn't have any passive verb forms, nor does it have a passive construction.

Somali word order is very flexible, and the topic/focus relation between the NP's can easily be change through a change in word order or the use of different focus particles.

*Shire Jaamac waxa uu qoray buugga “Gabayo, maahmaah iyo sheekooyin yaryar.”  
Buugga “Gabayo, maahmaah iyo sheekooyin yaryar” waxa qoray Shire Jaamac Axmed.*

The agents identity can be kept unknown through the use of the indefinite subject pronoun *la* ‘one’ in an active clause.

*... jidadka iyo aqalladana waa la qurxiyaa. Waxaa la qalaa xoolo badan, cunto badanna waa la sameeyaa. Cuntadan waxaa la siiyaa masaakiinta. (Cilmiga Beesha 4, 1976)*

## 9.2 Anticausatives

There are however forms that slightly resemble the passive. They are however not passive forms, but anticausative forms. In a passive clause, there is always a semantic agent, even if it is not explicitly stated.

In an anticausative clause, however, there is never any agent. What happens in the clause is due to natural forces, not an active participant or a causer.

*milaa* gudbe + 2 arguments: yeele + mayeele

**Biyihii** waxay mileen **milixdii**.

NATURAL FORCE PATIENT

**Macallinkii** wuxuu milay **milixdii**.

CAUSER PATIENT

*ku milaa* gudbe + 3 mowduc : yeele + 2 mayeele

**Macallinku** < **waxa uu** < **biyo** < **ku milay** < **cusbo badan**.

CAUSER MEDIUM PATIENT

*milmaa* magudbe + 1 mowduc: yeele

**Milixdii iyo sonkortii** way milmeen.

PATIENT

*ku milmaa* magudbe + 2 mowduc: yeele + mayeele

**Milixdii iyo sonkortii** waxay **ku milmeen** **biyihii**. (Intransitive, only SUBJ)

PATIENT NATURAL FORCE

*Anti-* means ‘the opposite (of)’ and *cause* ‘to make something happen’, hence an anticausative verb is a verb that expresses the opposite of a situation where someone makes/causes something (to) happen, i.e. a situation where **no agent exists**.

The derivational suffix for creating anticausative verbs in Somali is *-m-*.

*milaa* (transitive) something dissolves something

*milmaa* (intransitive) something dissolves (by itself)

The conjugation of anticausative verbs include vowel insertion and *m > n* consonant alternations.

*wuu milmaa* < mil-\_m -aa

*way milantaa* < mil-\_m-t-aa

Other pairs of basic and derived anticausative verbs:

*bilaabaa* (tr.): *Halkaas bay ilkuhu shaqadooda* ka *bilaabaan iyagoo jajabinaya cuntadii*.

*bilaabmaa* (intr.): *Nadaafadu waxa ay ka bilaabantaa guriga*.

FOR COMPARISON

In some other Cushitic languages, e.g. Gede'o, these forms with the morpheme /m/ function as real passive forms since the agent may be expressed through a noun phrase.

<b>Example 5</b>	<i>min-uww-i</i>	<i>gurgur-em-e(n)</i>
	house-PL-NOM	sell-PAS-PRF(DCL)
	'The houses were sold.'	

<b>Example 6</b>	<i>doori</i>	<i>min-uwwa</i>	<i>gurgur-[zero]-e(n)</i>
	doori	house-PL[ABS]	sell-3SG.M-PRF(DCL)
	'Doorি sold the houses.'		

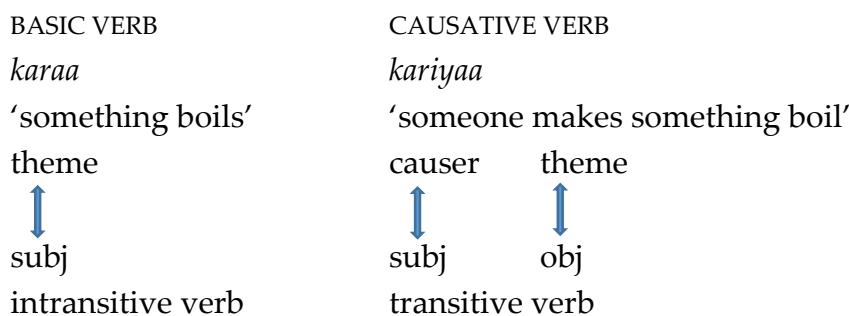
### 9.3 Causative verbs

Another type of very frequent derived verbs in Somali are the so called causatives. The causative verbs add one more term to the event, namely the causer, i.e. someone who causes or makes somebody else do something.

Most causative verbs are formed with the suffix *-i-*.

Causative verbs add a **causer** as the grammatical subject. Most causative verbs also change the grammatical role of the **causee**, i.e. the subject of the basic verb, into the object of the causative verb.

- karaa:*      *Kildhiga saar dabka ilaa ay biyuhu ka karayaan.*  
*kariyaa:*    *Ma kariyaa qoyskiinnu biyaha?*

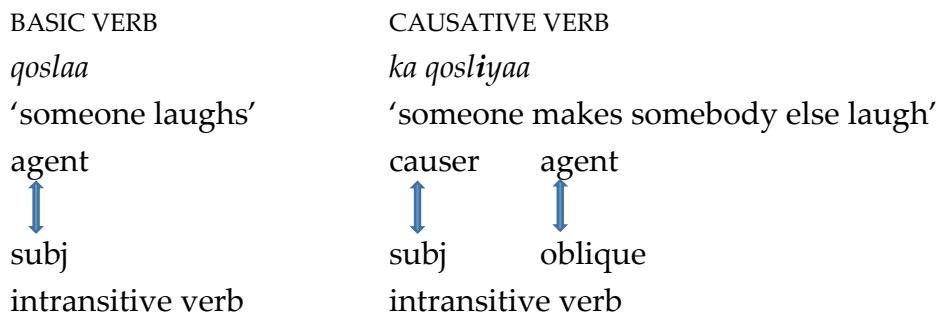


More examples:

- jabaa* (intr.):      *Koobkii baa jabay.*  
*jebiyaa* (trans.):    *Faadumaa koobkii jebisay.*
- toosaa* (intr.):      *Waan toosay.*  
*toosiyaa* (trans.):    *Wuu i toosiyay.*

Some causative verbs add a causer as the subject and causee, i.e. the subject of the basic verb becomes an oblique argument of the causative verb with the preposition *ka*.

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <i>qoslaa</i> (intr.):      | <i>Ardaydii way qosleen.</i>                |
| <i>ka qosliyaa</i> (intr.): | <i>Macallinku ardaydii wuu ka qosliyay.</i> |



Some causative verbs are formed with the morpheme *-sii-*.

Intransitive verbs usually become transitive:

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>tartamaa</i> (intr.):      | <i>Inammadii way tartameen.</i>                                       |
| <i>tartansiyyaa</i> (trans.): | <i>Kuma ayuu ahaa xayawaanka tartansiinayay diinka iyo bakaylaha?</i> |

Transitive verbs become ditransitive:

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <i>fahmaa</i> (trans.):        | <i>Ardaydii darsigii way fahmeen.</i>                 |
| <i>fahamsiiyaa</i> (ditrans.): | <i>Macallinka ayaa ardaydii fahamsiiyay darsigii.</i> |

Certain intransitive verbs remain intransitive. The causee becomes an oblique with *ka*.

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <i>ordaa</i> (intr.):         | <i>Way ordayeen.</i>                               |
| <i>ka orodsiyyaa</i> (intr.): | <i>...waxaa uu ka orodsiiyey wasiirro badan...</i> |

## 9.4 Reflexive verbs and constructions

When the same person is both the agent and the patient/theme of a verb, the clause is referred to as reflexive. Some languages use special reflexive pronouns to express this kind of events, while some languages use special verb forms or derived verbs.

Somali uses both the reflexive pronoun *is* 'oneself' and some derived verbs.

- Saynisyahanno dhawr ah ayaa is weydiiyey su'aahan...*  
*Immisa jeer ayaa uu wadnuhu is garaacayaa halkii daqiiqo?*  
*Xaaskii Diinku way is qarisay.*

It is worth emphasising that Somali has only one reflexive pronoun, whereas some other languages, such as English, have different pronouns for different persons.

*I cut myself on the knife.*

*You cut yourself on the razor.*

*She cut herself on the scissors.*

Some languages simply use certain verbs that are usually transitive without an object, i.e. as intransitive verbs, in order to express a reflexive event.

*jag tvättade kläderna*      *I washed the clothes*

*jag tvättade mig*      *I washed*

*frisören rakade kunden*      *the barber shaved the customer*

*jag rakade mig*      *I shaved*

In many such cases, Somali uses special derived verbs with the suffixes *-st-/ -sad-*, belonging to the 3rd conjugation, e.g.

*shanleeyaa* (tr.):      *Gabadha nadiifta ahi timaheeda waa ay shanlaysaa.*

*u shanleeyaa:*      *Hooyo waxa ay subax waliba u shanlaysaa Axmed.*

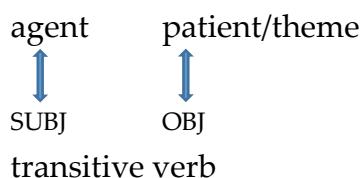
*shanlaystaa* (refl.):      *Xasan waa uu shanlaysanayaa.*

*u qubeeyaa:*      *Safiya waxay u qubeysay Aamina.*

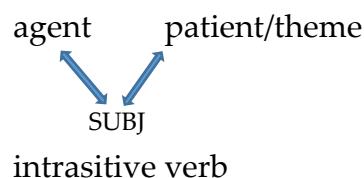
*qubaystaa* (refl.):      *Maalin waliba Sahro waa ay qubaysataa.*

Also the reflexive verbs usually become intransitive and take only one term: SUBJ.

### Basic verb



### Reflexive Verb

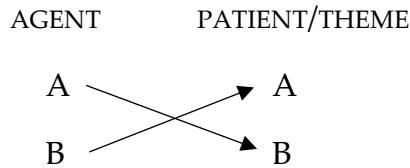


## 9.5 Reciprocal events

Reciprocal events are in some sense similar to reflexive events, but also quite different.

In reciprocal events, more than one person must be involved. The same people are both the agent and the patient/theme of the action, but it is not the same person that is both agent and patient/theme. Instead different persons are agent and

patient/theme. Person A is the agent of an action where person B is the patient/theme, and at the same time person B is the agent of another action where person A is the patient/theme.



*Dadkuna way is ilaaliyaan.*  
*Sidee bay isu taageeraan dadka waaweyn?*

## 9.6 Autobenefactive events

Another important type of derived verbs that are very frequent in Somali are the autobenefactive verbs. The derivational suffix is *-t-/d-*. This type of derivation usually does not change the valence of the involved verb. It only adds a sense of “reflexive” beneficiary. The agent of the action is at the same time the beneficiary of the action. The same person, so to say, fills two semantic roles at the same time.

*beeraa* (m.), *beertaa* (f.) (tr.)  
*beertaa* (m.), *beerataa* (f.) (tr., autoben.)

Sometimes there are three different verbs, one intransitive, and two transitive ones.

<i>karaa</i> (m.), <i>kartaa</i> (f.) (intr.)	<i>Bariisku wuu karayaa.</i>
<i>kariyaa</i> (m.), <i>karisaa</i> (f.) (tr.)	<i>Waxa uu karinayaa bariiska.</i>
<i>karsadaa</i> (m.), <i>karsataa</i> (f.) (tr., autoben.)	<i>Waxa uu karsanayaa bariiska.</i>

Sometimes there are instead two intransitive verbs, and only one transitive.

*diiraa* (m.), *diirtaa* (f.) (intr.)  
*diiriya* (m.), *diirisaa* (f.) (tr.)  
*diirsadaa* (m.), *diirsataa* (f.) (intr., autoben.)

## 9. Terminology

Valency: terms = subject & objects

Intransitive, transitive, ditransitive verbs

Oblique arguments

Passive, Anticuasative, Causative, Reflexive, Reciprocal, Autobenefactive

## 9. Additional reading

Kroeger (2005), Chapter 14, pages 270–282.

Haspelmath, Martin & Thomas Müller-Bardey. 2004. Valency change. In Geert Booij & Christian Lehmann, Joachim Mugdan & Stavros Skopeteas (eds.), *Morphology: An international handbook on inflection and word-formation*, Volume 2, 1130-1145. Berlin & New York: Walter de Gruyter.

[https://www.researchgate.net/publication/349962680\\_Valency\\_change](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/349962680_Valency_change)

Saeed, John Ibrahim. 1989. Morphological Causatives and Verbal Argument Structure in Somali. In *Proceedings of the second international symposium on Cushitic and Omotic languages, Naples, Italy, 16-18 November, 1989*, edited by Giorgio Banti, 1–15. Napoli: Istituto Universitario Orientale.

<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/5869>

Saeed, John Ibrahim. 1995. The semantics of middle voice in Somali. *African Languages and Cultures* 8(1), 61–85.

<https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2163>

Saeed: Causatives with *ka* ??

## 9. Old Exercises

13.1 Find three intransitive verbs and make a short sentence with each verb.

13.2 Find three transitive verbs and make short sentences with each verb.

13.3 Find three ditransitive verbs and make short sentences with each verb.

13.4 Choose a transitive verb. Write the same sentence in six versions.

- a. Use SVO word order and focus the subject.
- b. Use SVO word order and focus the object.
- c. Use OVS word order and focus the subject.
- d. Use OVS word order and focus the object.
- e. Use SVO word order with the indefinite subject pronoun.
- f. Use OSV word order with the indefinite subject pronoun.

13.5 Find three anticausative verbs. Use each verb in a clause. Also write an equivalent clause with the corresponding basic verb.

13.6 Find three basic **intransitive** verbs with corresponding causative verbs. These three causative verbs should be derived with the suffix *-i-* and they should **not** take the preposition *ka*. Use each verb in a small clause.

Waan toosay.    Wuu i toosiyay.

13.7 Find three basic **intransitive** verbs with corresponding causative verbs. These three causative verbs should be derived with the suffix *-i-* and they **should** take the preposition *ka*. Use each verb in a small clause.

*Ardaydii way qosleen. Macallinku ardaydii wuu ka qosliyay.*

13.8 Find three basic **intransitive** verbs with corresponding causative verbs. These three causative verbs should be derived with the morpheme *-sii-* and they should **not** take the preposition *ka*. Use each verb in a small clause.

*Inammadii way tartameen.*

*Kuma ayuu ahaa xayawaanka tartansiinayay diinka iyo bakaylaha?*

13.9 Find three basic **intransitive** verbs with corresponding causative verbs. These three causative verbs should be derived with the morpheme *-sii-* and they **should** take the preposition *ka*. Use each verb in a small clause.

*Way ordayeen. ...waxaa uu ka orodsiiyey wasiirro badan...*

13.10 Find three basic **trasitive** verbs with corresponding causative verbs. These three causative verbs should be derived with the suffix *-i-*. Use each verb in a small clause.

13.11 Find three basic **trasitive** verbs with corresponding causative verbs. These three causative verbs should be derived with the suffix *-sii-*. Use each verb in a small clause.

*Ardaydii darsigii way fahmeen. Macallinka ayaa ardaydii fahamsiiyay darsigii.*

13.12 Find three verbs that can be used with the reflexive pronoun in a truly reflexive meaning (not reciprocal!). Make small clauses with these verbs.

13.13 Find three verbs that have some kind of reflexive meaning and that are derived with the suffix *-st-/sad-* and belong to the 3rd conjugation. Use the verbs in small clauses, e.g. *Xasan waa uu shanlaysanayaa*.

13.14 Find three verbs that can be used with the reflexive pronoun in a **reciprocal** meaning. Make small clauses with these verbs, e.g. *Dadkuna way is ilaaliyaan*.

13.15 Find three basic **intransitive** verbs with a corresponding intransitive autobenefactive verb. Write small clauses with all the verb, both the basic ones and the autobenefactive ones, e.g. *diiraa* (m.), *diirtaa* (f.) – *diirsadaa* (m.), *diirsataa* (f.)

13.16 Find three basic **trasitive** verbs with a corresponding transitive autobenefactive verb. Write small clauses with all the verb, both the basic ones and the autobenefactive ones, e.g. *Waxa uu karinayaa bariiska*. *Waxa uu karsanayaa bariiska*.



# Notes 2022

## 1. Intransitive verbs

Waan **orday**.

Canab way **qososhay**.

Way **kortay**.

wiilku wuu seexday.

Gabdhu way cabatay.

Cunug baa dhashay.

## 2. Transitive verbs

Xaawo waxa ay **tolaysaa** maro.

Ninku waxa uu **akhrinayaa** buug.

Anigu waxaan **gadanayaa** dhar cusub.

Axmed wuxuu arkay libaax.

Sahra waxay maqashay onkod.

Cali wuxuu cabbay biyo.

## 3. Ditransitive verbs

Hooyadu waxay ilmaha **cabsiinaysaa** caano.

Adam ayaa **cunsiinaya** bisadda hilib.

Hooyada ayaa eyga **nuujinaysa** naaska.

siinayaa

## 4. Word order and focus

- a. Use SVO word order and focus the subject.
- b. Use SVO word order and focus the object.
- c. Use OVS word order and focus the subject.
- d. Use OVS word order and focus the object.

- e. Use SVO word order with the indefinite subject pronoun.
- f. Use OSV word order with the indefinite subject pronoun.

- a. Use SVO word order and focus the subject.

Aniga ayaa toosiya caruurta.

Ruux baa toosiya caruurta.

- b. Use SVO word order and focus the object.

Anigu waxa aan toosiyyaa caruurta.

- c. Use OVS word order and focus the subject.

Caruurta waxa toosiya aniga.

- d. Use OVS word order and focus the object.

Caruurta baa uu toosiyyaa Cali.

- f. Use OSV word order and focus the subject.

Caruurta ruux baa toosiya.

- a. Use SVO word order and focus the subject.

Cali ayaa ka dhergey moos.

- b. Use SVO word order and focus the object.

Cali wuxuu ka dhergey moos.

- c. Use OVS word order and focus the subject.

Mooska waxaa ka dhergey Cali.

- d. Use OVS word order and focus the object.

Moos buu ka dhergey Cali.

- e. Use SVO word order with the indefinite subject pronoun.

Waa **laga** ka dhergey moos.

- f. Use OSV word order with the indefinite subject pronoun.

Moos baa laga dhergay

## 5. anticausative verbs

Xadhigii waa uu furmay.                    Baashe baa furay xadhiga.

Daartii waa ay **dhismaysaa**.                Faysal wuxu dhisayaa daarta.                (bygget pågår)

Kursigii waa uu **qaadmaya**.                Hodan waxay qaadysaa kursiga.    (går att flytta)

Gaaskii wxuu labay rinjigii iyo olyadii (Transitive, SUBJ + OBJ)

Causer Patient

Rinjigii iyo olyadii waxay ku labmeen gaaskii.(Intransitive, only SUBJ)

Patient oblique

Daadkii wuxuu qasay ciiddii iyo dhoobadii (Transitive, SUBJ + OBJ)

Causer Patient

Ciiddii iyo dhoobadii waxay ku qasmeen daadkii(Transitive, SUBJ + OBJ)

Patient oblique

Furuuhu wuxuu furaa albaabka bakhaarka. (transtive)

Albaabka bakhaarku wuxuu ku furmaa furaha. (intransitive)

## 6. Causative -i- verbs without ka

**Waan toosay.**      **Wuu i toosiyay.**

Waan toosay. Wuu i toosiyay.

Waan kufay. Wuu i kufiyey.

Waan xusuustay. Wuu i xusuusiyay.

Waa lumay. Way i lumisay.

Bariisku wuu jilcaa.      Biyaha badani waxay jilcinayaan bariiska.

Ilmuuhu wuu nuugaa.      Hooyadu waxay nuujinaysaa ilmaha.

Koobku wuu jabaa.      Bisaddu waxay jabinaysaa koobka.

Boolisku waxaa uu maquuniyay dibadbaxayaasha.      **basic verb???**

Boolisku waa uu kala dareeriay bannaanbaxayaasha.

## 7. Causative -i- verbs with ka

**Ardaydii way qosleen.**      **Macallinku ardaydii wuu ka qosliyay.**

**Gabdhiil way faraxday**      **Hooyadu gabdhii way ka qoslisey.**

**Farskii wuu dananay.**      **Faraskii libaaxii baa ka dananiyey.**

Dabkii waa holcay

Dabkii dhinac baa laga holciyey.

dhinac+ka ??

Ardaydii way qosleen. Macallinku ardaydii wuu ka qosliyay.

Dadkii way ooyeen. Ninku dadkii buu ka boohiyay.

Carruurtii way farxeen Aabbuhu carruurtii buu ka farxiyey.

Dadkii way nexeen Tuuggu dadkii buu ka nixiyey

Wasiirku waa uu ka farxiyay shaqaalaha wasaaradda.

## 8 . Causative -sii- verbs without ka

Inammadii way tartameen.

Kuma ayuu ahaa xayawaanka tartansiinayay diinka iyo bakaylaha?

Ardaydu way tartamaan.

Cali ayaa kubadda ciyaarsiinaya ardayda.

Gaadhigu wuu socdaa.

Waa kuma qofka socodsiiinaya gaadhiga?

Ardaydu way fahmeen casharka.

Macallinka ayaa casharka fahamsiiyey ardayda.

Shaqaalihii way xishoodeen

Yaa yaqaan sida looga xishoodsiiyo shaqaalaha xafiiska?

Wiilkii wuu socod bartay.

Wiilka waa la socodsiiyay.

way ogaadeen sirta dawladda.

Maxaa dadweynaha ogeysiyyay sirta dawladda?

Ardaydii darsigii way fahmeen.

Macallinka ayaa ardaydii fahamsiiyay darsigii.

Wiilku wuxu korayaasallaan.

Wiilku wuxuu saaxiibkii korsiinayaasallaan.

Qamar waxay

dhegeysanaysaa quraan.

Qamar waxay quraan dhegeysiinaysaa saaxiibadeed.

Xaawo waxay cabbaysaa biyo.

Xaawo waxay ilmaheeda cabsiinaysaa caano.

Ardaydii darsigii way fahmeen. Macallinka ayaa ardaydii fahamsiiyay darsigii

Carruurtii cuntadii way dhadhamiyeen. Kariyihii ayaa carruurtii dhadhansiiyay cuntadii

Bukaanku daawadii buu cabbay. Kalkaalisaada ayaa bukaankii cabsiisay daawadii.

Ilmihi caano buu dhamay. Hooyadii ayaa ilmihi caano dhansiisay.

## 9. Causative -sii- verbs with ka

Way ordayeen. ...waxaa uu ka orodsiiyey wasiirro badan...

Wuu ooyay Waan ka oohisiiyey wiilkii.

Wuu qoslay Waan ka qosolsiiyey saaxiibkay.

Way cadhootay Waan ka cadhaysiiyey gabadha.

Carruurta ayaa uu (ka) ciyaarsiiyey.

Way qaliyeen. ... waxa ay ka qaylisiisay ardaydii.

Way samreen. Sheekhii baa ka samarsiiyay wixii dhacay.

Way fahmi waayeen. Baruhu wuxuu ka fahamsiiyay meel dhaw.

## 12 Truly reflexive use of si

1- Madaxweynihii ayaa **is** casilay.

2- Muraayaddii ayay **isku** daawatay.

3- Casharkii ayuu **is** fahansiiyey.

Meeqa jeer baa hooyadu is xanaajisay?

Intee jeer baa ninku is moodsiiyay in uu bixiyay dayntii?

Ninkii dhawr goor buu is qariyay.

Madaxkutidu sannadkii immisa kol bay is qarisaa?

Nin is faanshay waa ri' is nuugtay.

## 13 'Reflexive' meaning with suffix -st/-sad-

Xasan waa uu shanlaysanayaa.

Laylo way qubaysanaysaa. = qubaystaa

Ahmed wuu labisanayaa. = labistaa

Faarax saliidda ayuu marsanayaa. = marsadaa

Maxamuud waa uu jiifsadaa.

Bisaddu waa ay malabsataa.

Wiilashu waa ay shaqaystaan    autobenefaktivt

#### 14. Reciprocal meaning of reflexive pronoun

Dadkuna way is ilaaliyaan.

Ardaydu way is caawiyaan.

Beeralaydu way is kaashadaan.

Shaqaaluhu way is ballansadaan.

Wasiiradii way is casileen.

Libaaxyadu way is waardiyeyaa.

Yaxaasyadu waa is dilaan.

Arday badan baa is waydiisay imtixaanka imman doona

#### 15. Autobenefactive verbs

*diiraa* (m.), *diirtaa* (f.) – *diirsadaa* (m.), *diirsataa* (f.)

Faadumo waa ay uumisaa.

Faadumo waa ay uunsataa (uunsadaa(m.)

Geeddi waa uu xoqaa.

Geeddi waa uu xoqdaa (xoqataa(f.)

Anigu waan kaydiyaa.

Anigu waan kaydsadaa (kaydsataa(m.)

Waxay maydhaysaa dhar.

Waxay mayranaysaa dhar (autobenefactive).

Isagu waxa uu beraa midho.

Isagu waxa uu beeranayaa miro. (autobenefactive).

Xasan waxaa uu xereeyaa geela.

Xasan waxaa uu xeraysanayaa geela. (autobenefactive).

Dabkuu wuu shidmaa. (m) (int.)

Wuxuu shidaa dabka (trs.)

Waxa uu shidanayaa dab. (autobenefactive verb.)

Wadadu way leexataa. (f) (int.)

Wuxuu leexshaa wadada (trs.)

Waxay leexsanayaan wadada. (autobenefactive verb.)

Nalku wuu ifaa. (m.) (int.)

Wuxuu ifshaa nalka (trs.)

Waxay ifsanayaan nal. (autobenefactive verb.)

*Waxa uu karinayaa bariiska.*

*Waxa uu karsanayaa bariiska.*

Wuxuu diiriyaa biyaha. (**tr.**)

Wuxuu diirsadaa biyaha. (**tr., autoben.**)

Wuxuu tolayaa dhar. (**tr.**)

Wuxuu tolanayaa dhar. (**tr., autoben.**)

Wuxuu samaynayaa gaadhiga. (**tr.**)

Wuxuu samaysanayaa gaadhiga. (**tr., autoben.**)

Waxay maydhysaa dhar.

Waxay mayranaysaa dhar (autobenefactive).

Isagu waxa uu beraa midho.

Isagu waxa uu beeranayaa miro. (autobenefactive).

Xasan waxaa uu xereeyaa geela.

Xasan waxaa uu xeraysanayaa geela. (autobenefactive).

# Unit 10

## Tense, Aspect and Mood (< 8)

### 10.1 Tense

Tense is the grammatical marking of the point in time for an event.

**Morphological tense** is expressed **synthetically** by inflection, i.e. with affixes. Somali has two morphological or **synthetic tenses**: present and past.

PRESENT	<i>arkaa / arkayaa</i>
PAST	<i>arkay / arkayay</i>

There are also other **semantic tenses**, expressed **analytically** through the use of auxiliaries or other **constructions**, i.e. combinations of words. Such tenses may also be referred to as a **periphrastic** or **analytic tenses**.

Somali has a third, semantic tense, the future tense, expressed through a construction with the auxiliary *doonaa*.

FUTURE	<i>arki doonaa</i>
--------	--------------------

The Somali combination of two morphological and one semantic tense represents a quite common set of tenses that can be found in many other languages as well.

However, some languages have more than one past and/or future tense, differing, for example, in how far into the past or into the future the event is located.

Somali has only one past tense (morphological) and one future tense (semantic, constructional, periphrastic).

### Absolute and relative tense

Tenses mark the time of an event in relation to some point of reference. The point of reference is very often “now”. That kind of use of tense is called **absolute tense**.

In Somali **main clauses**, the verb normally expresses **absolute tense**.

The time of reference may also be another event. That kind of use of tense is called **relative tense**.

In Somali **subclauses**, the verb often expresses **relative tense**, and the point of reference is the event expressed by the verb in the main clause.

In the following Somali sentences, the simple subjunctive verb form in the subclause expresses relative tense. The event in the subclause is simultaneous with the event in the main clause.

*Ninkii waxa uu arkay in cagahiisii uu dhiig ka **socdo**.*

*Mannen såg att det **kom** blod från hans fötter.*

*Waxa uu arkay in ay kala weyn **yihiiin** labadii qaybood.*

*Han såg att de två delarna **var** olika stora.*

*Han sa att han var sjuk. (talspråk Han sa att "han är sjuk".)*

*Wuxuu yiri in uu xanuunsan **yahay**. presens*

*Wuxuu ii sheegay in uu **xanuunsanayo**. konj..*

*Han sa att han hade varit sjuk.*

*(Shaley) wuxuu yiri in (habeen hore) uu xanuunsanaa. / jirranaa. pret.*

*Wuxuu ii sheegay in uu **xanuunsanayay**. pret. progr.*

In Swedish, however, the verb in the subclause rather expresses absolute tense. When the main clause and subclause verbs are in the same tense, that means that the events are simultaneous.

In Somali, also past tense in subclauses is a relative tense. The point of reference is the event in the main clause. This means that a past tense verb in the subclause expresses an event that occurred in the past with respect to the main clause, i.e. the subclause event took place **before** the main clause event.

*351 ugaxood buu gurigiisa keenay, wuxuuna arkay in 35 ugaxood ay **jajabeen**.*

*Han kom hem med 351 ägg och han fick se att 35 ägg **hade gått sönder**.*

To express in Swedish that a past event in a subclause took place before another past event expressed in the main clause, a special relative tense has to be used – the **pluperfect** or **plusquamperfectum**.

## 10.2 Aspect

Aspect is the grammatical marking of the development or the distribution of an event over time.

Morphological aspect refers to inflectional forms that express aspect. Somali has the **progressive** aspect that is expressed by the suffix *-ay-*. Morphological aspect also

means that more or less all verbs will have these aspectual forms. Almost all Somali verb can form the progressive aspect.

SIMPLE	arkaa	arkay
PROGRESSIVE	arkayaa	arkayay

Another common aspect in various languages is the **habitual** aspect. In Somali the simple present tense form expresses either the habitual aspect or a general truth.

#### HABITUAL ASPECT

Anigu waxa aan **cunaa** subixii laxoox waxaana aan **cabbaa** caano.

#### GENERAL TRUTH

Baabuunku waxa uu ku dul **seexdaa** geedaha ama salaxyada dhaadheer. Waxa uu **cunaa** dooggaa, caleenta, iniimyaha, xididdada, diirka geedaha iyo malabka. Waxa kale oo uu daayeerkani **cunaa** cayayaanka sida caarada, dub-qalooca, mulaca iyo beedka shimbiraha.

However, in the past tense there is a special habitual construction with the auxiliary verb *jiray* that expresses the past habitual aspect. Also English and Swedish can form a habitual past with an auxiliary. English applies the auxiliary *used to*, whereas Swedish uses *brukade*. There is however an important difference. In Somali, it is obligatory to express past habitual events with the past habitual auxiliary construction, but in English and Swedish the use of the habitual auxiliary is optional.

Muxuu ka **shaqayn jiray** Juxaa?

What did Juha **work with**? What did Juha **use to work with**?

Vad **arbetade** Juha med? Vad **brukade** Juha **arbeta med**?

In English and Swedish the meaning does not change significantly if the simple past is used instead of the habitual past. However, if one of the other two aspects is used in Somai instead of the habitual aspect, the meaning changes significantly.

Muxuu ka **shaqeeyay** Juxaa?

Muxuu ka **shaqeynayay** Juxaa?

Some languages also have other aspects, such as the **perfective**, which refers to the event as complete. Other labels for very similar meanings are **resultative** or **completive**. Somali has the particle *soo* that seems to have become an expression of such **completive** aspect, besides its original meaning of movement towards a place.

#### DIRECTIONAL PARTICLE

**Soo gal!**

Markuu i **soo ag istaagay** barafuun baa sanka **soo gaaray**.

#### COMPLETIVE ASPECTUAL PARTICLE

Waxa aan horay u **soo sheegnay** ilaha ugu waaweyn ee dhaqaalaha...

Warqaddii markuu dhakhtarku **soo qoray** oo uu ninkii u dhiibayo ayuu askarigu fashilay sirtii.

Maalintii saddexaad Xasan mooskii ayuu **soo cunay**. Inta uusan guriga ka **soo bixin**, waxa uuna gacanta ku **soo qaatay** qobkii mooska, waxa uuna ku fekerey in uu xal u helo dhibaatada haysata.

Compare the meaning of the three sentences.

Caanaha markuu ninku **soo lisay** ayey daateen.

Caanaha markuu ninku **lisay** ayey daateen.

Caanaha markuu ninku **lisayay** ayey daateen.

Another interesting aspect is the **continuative** aspect that occurs in some languages with the meaning that the action keeps going on, the actor goes on doing something, keeps doing it, or does not stop doing it. Somali has the particle *sii* that might be considered an expression of this continuative aspect, besides its original meaning of movement away from a place.

#### DIRECTIONAL PARTICLE

**Sii gal!**

Cali buugga buu **sii gaday**.

**Sii orod!**

#### CONTINUATIVE ASPECTUAL PARTICLE

**Sii shaqee!**

**Sii joog!**

Daarta **sii safee**.

Waa in uu **sii kordhaa kaqaybgalkooda xagga siyaasadda**.

Xayawaankee baa dhex ku **sii hurday** [tartankii]?

More examples

Bal eega, wuu **soo socdaa**, Isagoo buuraha korkooda ku **soo boodboodaya**...

Wiilka iyo hooyadii markii ay kala bogteen, ayaa waxaa dhankooda u **soo dhaqaaqay** dumarkii reer xaafadda ahaa ee nala taagnaa aniga iyo Maryan.

Sidaas oo kalena jaraa'idka, waxa lagu daabacay xuruufa ay fartu ka kooban tahay; casharro isdabajoog ahna waa lagu **soo qori jiray**.

Hooyo waxay noo sheegtay kolkuu **soo cab** waa sidaa... Kolkuu naagliisa kale la **soo dagaalo aniguu cadhada iila yimaadaa**...

*Sow maahayn in aan u sii gudbo tan xigta iyo tan sii xigta ilaa aan gaaray meel aan guriga dib uga **soo** aqoon waayo.*

*Wuxuu u **soo** noqday saaxibkiis, wuxuuna ku yiri: «Waxaan **soo** arkay meel barwaaqo leh, laakiin waa khatar, maxaa yeelay bahallo ayaa jooga». Wuxuu kula taliyay dameerkii inuu tartiib u **soo** cuno cawska una **soo** cabbo biyaha.*

*Waxay **soo** gaartey goobtii baska lagu sugaayey.*

*Axmed waxa uu u shaqeeyaa warshada Volvo, warshaddu wax ay **soo** saartaa gawaarida yaryar iyo kuwa waawaynba.*

*Qorsho oo aan hadalkii carabkeeda ka sii dhammaan ayaa albaabka la **soo** garaacay.*

*Xayawaankee baa **sii** watay orodkiisii?*

*Waa in uu **sii** kordhaa ka-qayb-galkooda xagga siyaasadda.*

*Haddii tabakaayadii Aad ii dirtay ee gurigeena ka horraysay xirnayd, muxuu ahaa ikhtiyaarka kale ee ii bannaanaa? Sow maahayn in aan u **sii** gudbo tan xigta iyo tan **sii** xigta ilaa aan gaaray meel aan guriga dib uga **soo** aqoon waayo.*

*Wuu **sii** hadlay:...*

*"Abaayo, musqusha ayaan gelayaaye i **sii** sug."*

*"Naa bal ha soo daahin, meel iga yaabisay baad i keentee," Saxarla ayaa ka **sii** daba tidhi Muxubo oo xaggii musqusha u **sii** socota.*

*Intii ay dhexda ku **sii** jireen, Saxarla hadal badan ma odhan...*

*"Abaayo, adigu guriga **sii** ilaali, waadigii xalayna xanuunsaday ee seexan kari waayeye"*

*Markii aan bilaabay akhriska oo aan arkay culayska kelmadaha waaweyn ee uu qoraagu isticmaalay, Aad ayaan uga werweray **sii** akhrinta, laakiin markii aan **sii** akhriyoba buugga Saxarla waxa uu noqday mid Aad ii xiiso geliya. (Saxarla)*

*haddii xanuunku **sii** jiro...*

*Bakeerigaas markii uu laacay ayuu ku ciiray sariirtiisa oo afadiisu durba ka **sii** khuurineysey.*

There is also an **iterative** or **repetitive** or **distributive** aspect in many languages, meaning that the action is carried out several times. This seems to be what verbs with reduplication express in Somali.

*Wadnaha ayaa si ba'an u **boodboodey**...*

*Yaxaasku waxa uu ilkihiisa ku **jejebin** karaa lafaha dibi lugihii.*

*Dhagaxa dubbe ku **jejebi**.*

It seems, however, that all the events must occur together, e.g., more or less at the same time, since an action that is carried out several times on different occasions is expressed by the **habitual aspect**.

*Wadnaha ayaa si ba'an u boodi jirey...*  
*Wadnaha ayaa si ba'an u boodboodi jirey...*

Other aspects that occur in several languages are the **inceptive** (or inchoative) aspect (to begin to do something) and the **terminative** (or cessative) aspect (to stop doing something). Somali does not have grammatical forms or constructions for these aspects, but simply uses verbs like *bilaabaa* followed by a subclause or a verbal noun.

*Waxa uu odaygii bilaabay in uu raadiyo cid magaaladii u socoto.*  
*Waxay bilowday shaqadeedii.*  
*Maalintaas ayuu Negeeye joojiyey in uu arrimahaa ka fekero.*  
*Waxay joojisay cabbidda sigaarka.*

Certain languages have special affixes or auxiliary verbs that express **inceptive** and **terminative** aspect.

<i>zaczął</i>	<i>płakać</i>	<i>roz-płakał</i>	<i>się</i>	(Polish, Poland)
he.started	cry.inf	INCEPTIVE-he.cried	REFL	
'he started crying'		'he started crying'		(personal knowledge)
<i>satü</i>	<i>püe</i>	<i>nangkawi-mmahwa</i>		(Timbisha, California, USA)
that	just	talk-TERMINATIVE		
'he just finished talking'				(Dayley 1989: 59)

## Aspect & Tense

Some aspectual distinctions are made in all tenses, whereas other distinctions are only made in some tenses.

The Somali progressive aspect does not exist in the future tense, only in the present and past, and the habitual aspect only has a dedicated form in the past tense. In the present tense both habitual events and general truth are expressed by the simple (non-progressive) form of the verb.

## Lexical aspect

Lexical aspect refers to the fact that certain verbs, already in their basic meaning, express some kind of aspect. Some verbs refer to **events** (i.e. situations where something happens, some activity is carried out), whereas other verbs refer to **states**.

It is a general tendency in English that only verbs that express an event or action are used in the progressive aspect, whereas verbs that denote a state usually are not used very much in the progressive aspect.

<i>Jim has a headache.</i>	<i>*Jim is having a headache.</i>
<i>Sue loves dogs.</i>	<i>*Sue is loving dogs.</i>

Also in Somali, verbs that denote actions need to be used in the progressive form in order to express an on-going event.

<i>Hadda ma i maqlaysaa?</i>	<i>?Hadda ma i maqashaa?</i>
<i>?Are you hearing me?</i>	<i>Do you hear me?</i>

For some verb that rather describe a state, however, the simple form is often used to describe an on-going event.

<i>Hadda way hurd-aan.</i>	<i>?Hadda way hurd-ay-aan.</i>
----------------------------	--------------------------------

Some verbs that lack a progressive form:

<i>yahay, leeyahay, adj.+yahay</i>	
<i>bukaa, bugtaa</i>	<i>*bukayaa</i>
<i>rabaa</i>	<i>*rabayaa</i>

*Wuxuu jecelyahay cunto macaan.  
Waxay ogtahay waxay rabto.  
Wuxuu leeyahay aqoon.  
Waxay rabtaa cunto.*

## Telic vs. atelic verbs

Event verbs may be further divided into telic and atelic verbs. **Telic** verbs have an endpoint (*jabaa, helaa*), the action becomes completed, whereas **atelic** verbs don't have an endpoint (*heesaa, akhriyaa*), you can go on doing it for as long as you wish.

## Taxis

The time relation between the actions expressed by the main and subordinate clauses of a sentence is called TAXIS in linguistics.

The progressive aspect in a Somali subclause usually means that the actions in the two clauses are simultaneous. This is often expressed by the present tense in the English subclause.

The simple aspect in a Somali temporal subclause usually expresses that the action in the subclause is finished before the action in the main clause begins. This is often

expressed by the present perfect in the English subclause, but it also occurs that the present tense is used if the time relation is clear enough from the context.

*Carruurtu marka ay masaaqidka ka soo noqdaan waxa ay cunayaan buskud iyo xalwo.*  
‘When the children **return/have returned** from the mosque they eat biscuits and halwa. | När barnen **kommer/har kommit** tillbaka från moskén äter de kakor och halva.’

*Markii ay casar tukadaan carruurtu waxa ay akhrinayaan Qur'aanka.*  
‘When they (**\*pray**) **have prayed** the afternoon prayer the children read the Qur'an. | När de (**\*ber**) **harbett** eftermiddagsbönen läser barnen Koranen.’

*Markii Qur'aanka akhriskiisu uu dhammaado carruurtu waxa ay aadayaan guriga adeerkood.*

‘When the Qur'an reading **finishes/has finished** the children go to their uncle's house. | När Koranläsningen **tar slut/har tagit slut** går barnen hem till sin farbror.’

## 10.3 Mood and Modality

**Mood** and **modality** are closely related, and the exact definitions vary between linguists. Mood and modality is the grammatical marking of the speaker's relation to the event and the event's relation to reality, as well as the function of a clause in communication.

An important division is between real actions, expressed in the **realis** or **indicative** mood, and imagined, non-real actions, expressed in the **irrealis** mood.

In Somali, the **irrealis** is further subdivided, most importantly into **subjunctive** and **imperative**.

The three Somali **morphological moods** are:

- the **indicative** or **realis** mood: *akhriyaa, akhrinayaa, akhriyay, akhrinayay*
- the **irrealis subjunctive** mood: *akhriyo, akhrinayo, akhrin, akhrinayn*
- the **irrealis imperative** mood: *akhri!, akhriya!*

Semantically, there are many more moods. They are all expressed by auxiliaries or particles or other constructions. The most important ones are:

- the **irrealis conditional**: *akhri lahaa*
- the **irrealis optative**: *aan akhriyo, ha akhriso*
- the **irrealis prohibitive**: *ha akhrin*

- the irrealis **negative**: *ma akhriso*
- the realis **interrogative**: *ma akhrisaa?*

**Modality** usually refers to the use of certain auxiliaries or constructions, e.g.

- **possibility/ability**: *akhri karaa*
- **inability**: *akhri waayay*
- **obligation**: *waa in aan akhriyo*
- **mirative or admirable** (surprise and admiration): *Cuntaduna macaanaa.*

## 10. Terminology

Tense, morphological tense, form, construction, semantic tense, present, past, future, absolute tense, relative tense;  
 mood, indicative/realis, irrealis/subjunctive, conditional, imperative;  
 aspect, progressive, habitual, iterative, completive, continuative.

## 10. Additional reading

Read: Kroeger (2005), Chapter 9, pages 147–169.

Palmer, Frank Robert. 2001. Mood and modality.

[Beginner's Somali Grammar](#) (Subjunctive verb forms, pages 87-89)

[Contrastive Somali Grammar für Mother Tongue Speakers](#)

[Aasaaska Kooban Ee Naxwaha Afka Soomaaliga](#) (Subjunctive verb forms, pages 46-47)

[Bourdin 2005 - The marking of directional deixis in Somali.pdf](#)

[Gebert 1988 - Notes on somali verbal aspect.pdf](#)

[Gebert 2011 - Stative, Iterative, Habitual - Slavic-Somali Parallels.pdf](#)

[Gebert 2011 Talk - Typology of verbal aspect, How Somali explains Slavic.pdf](#)

## 10. New Exercises

8.1 Are there any Somali verbs that are not used in the progressive aspect? Use them in sentences that would require the progressive form of other verbs, but where you can use the simple form of these exceptional verbs.

8.2 Some verbs seem to exhibit a variation in the use of the progressive forms, some use them, and some don't, e.g. *socdaa/soconayaa* 'is walking', *karaa/karayaa* 'can'. Would you use them? What might be the explanation to this variation?

8.3 Some tenses and aspects cannot be used in certain types of clauses or constructions. What tenses and aspects can be used in clauses beginnnin with

*Waa in ay...*

*Waxaan rabaa in...*

What tenses and aspects cannot be used in this type of clause. Give examples of both grammatical and ungrammatical full clauses of this type, and state what verb forms are possible and what forms are not possible.

### 8.4 The Rhetorical Mood

*Qalinka maad i siisid?*

1. How would you translate this into Swedish or English?
2. In what situation can you use this sentence?
3. Is *ma* interrogative or negative?
4. Is there a higih tone on *máad* or not?
5. Where is the high tone on the verb: *siísid* or *siisíd*?
6. Is *aad* optional or obligatory? Can you also say *Qalinka ma i siisid?* with the same meaning?

8.5 Explain the meaning of *soo* in the following examples. Could any of these examples involve a **completive** (resultative, perfective) aspect? Is it possible to take away *soo* in these sentences? How does the meaning change if *soo* is taken away?

*Hooyo waxay noo sheegtay kolkuu **soo** cabو waa sidaا... Kolkuu naagtiiسا kale la **soo** dagaalo aniguu cadhada iila yimaadaا...*

*Wuxuu u **soo** noqday saaxibkiis, wuxuuna ku yiri: «Waxaan **soo** arkay meel barwaaqo leh, laakiin waa khatar, maxaa yeelay bahallo ayaa jooga». Wuxuu kula taliyay dameerkii inuu tartiib u **soo** cuno cawska una **soo** cabbo biyaha.*

*Waxay **soo** gaartey goobtii baska lagu sugaayey.*

*Qorsho oo aan hadalkii carabkeeda ka sii dhammaan ayaa albaabka la **soo** garaacay.*

8.6 Give examples of some Somali verbs with an **iterative** meaning. Use them in full sentences.

8.7 Sometimes the two aspects are used in subclauses to express different time relations bewteen the main clause and the subclause. How would you explain the

difference in meaning between these sentences? (One of the sentences was found in a story under a picture showing some children sitting at home and eating sweets.)

*Marka ay masajidka ka soo noqdaan waxa ay cunayaan buskud iyo nacnac.*

*Marka ay masajidka ka soo noqonayaan waxa ay cunayaan buskud iyo nacnac.*

8.x Can you think of some sentences where the main clause is in the past tense and the subclause refers to an event that should occur after the event in the main clause in a **relative** manner? How would you for example translate the following sentences?

*Han ville att hon skulle hjälpa honom med läxan.*

*(Jag pratade med henne i förra veckan.) Då sa hon att hon skulle resa till Somalia. (Jag tror att hon är där nu.)*

## Discussion (< 8)

### The construction *Waa in...*

Some tenses and aspects cannot be used in certain types of clauses or constructions.

*Waa in...* allows for present (*sheegaa*) and past (*sheegay*) indicative verbs as well as subjunctive (*sheego*) and the conditional (*sheegi lahaa*), but not future tense (*sheegi doonaa*).

Both present indicative and the subjunctive express an obligation. The question is whether there is a semantic difference between the two forms and if so, what that difference is.

*Waa in ay u sheegtaa.*

*Waa in ay u sheegto.*

*Waa in aynu toosnaa si aynu u gudano howsha.*

*Waa in aynu toosno si aynu u gudano howsha.*

The past tense expresses probability or an obligation that was at hand in a situation in the past.

*Waa in ay u sheegtay.*

‘She must have said it to them.’ (Most probably.)

‘She should have said it to them.’ (She had the obligation.)

*Waa in ay dib u noqotay.*

*Horta waa in ay u sheegtay.*

*Waa in ay seexdeen guriga.*

The conditional is very close in meaning to one of the meanings of the past tense. Is there a difference? If so, what is that difference?

*Waa ay u sheegi lahayd.*

*Waa in ay u sheegtay.*

‘She should have said it to them.’ (She had the obligation.)

The future tense is not possible in this construction.

\**Waa in ay sheegi doontaa*

## The construction *Waxaan rabaa in...*

This main clause is mostly followed by a verb in the simple aspect of the subjunctive mood.

*Waxaan rabaa in ay cunto.*

*Waxaan rabaa in aad cuntid.*

*Waxaan rabaa in ay seexdáan.*

*Waxaan rabaa in aad aaddo dugsiga.*

The progressive aspect cannot be used.

\**Waxaan rabaa in ay cunayso.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in aad cunasyid.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in ay seexanayáan.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in aad aadysid dugsiga.*

Past and future tense as well as the conditional mood cannot be used.

\**Waxaan rabaa in aad tagtay dugsiga.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in aad tagaysay dugsiga.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in aan dhar soo gadanayay.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in aan dhar soo gadan jirey.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in aad aadi doontid dugsiga.*

\**Waxaan rabaa in aad aadi lahayd dugsiga.*

## Subclauses introduced by *si ... u*

Also here, the simple aspect of the subjunctive mood is used.

*Si uu Cali guri u iibsado, waxa aan siiyey lacag.*

*Si aad miisaankaaga u dhinto, waa in aad jimicsataa.*

In negative subclauses the reduced subjunctive form is used.

*Si uusan boolisku u helin tuuggii, waxa uu ku dhuuntay guriga .*

## The use of *soo*

*Soo gala!*

(om värdens är inne) mer respektfullt än bara ”gala”.  
shows **direction** to enter in

*Gala!*

(om värdens står ute) without direction to enter

*Sii gala!*

(värdens kommer efter)

*Bal eega, wuu soo socdaa, Isagoo buuraha korkooda ku soo boodboodaya...*

Rörelse mot ett plats. Shows the **direction** come to here

*Bal eega, wuu socdaa, Isagoo buuraha korkooda ku boodboodaya...*

Rörelse utan riktning. just is going without knowing which direction is going to or from.

Wiilka iyo hooyadii markii ay kala bogteen, ayaa waxaa dhankooda u soo dhaqaaqay dumarkii  
reer xaafadda ahaa ee nala taagnaa aniga iyo Maryan.

*Waxa aan horay u sheegnay ilaha ugu waaweyn ee dhaqaalaha...*

*Waxa aan horay u soo sheegnay ilaha ugu waaweyn ee dhaqaalaha...*

It still has a connection, relevance. It emphasises. Expresses compleutive aspect.

Resultativ eller kompletts aspekt

*Warqaddii markuu dhakhtarku soo qoray oo uu ninkii u dhiibayo ayuu askarigu fashilay sirtii.*  
Tidskillnad?? Ingen skillnad?? samtidighet-sekvensiellt ?? utan att man sett handlingen??  
riktnings mot ärendet???

*Caanaha markuu ninku soo lisay ayey daateen.*

It happened a while after he had milked.

He had milked for somebody else and should have taken it to them.

*Caanaha markuu ninku lisay ayey daateen.*

*Caanaha markuu ninku lisayay ayey daateen.*

*Axmed waxa uu u shaqeeyaa warshada Volvo. Warshaddu wax ay **soo saartaa** gawaarida  
yaryar iyo kuwa waawaynba.*

Here, *soo saaraa* is a multi-word lexeme with a very different meaning than the simple *saaraa*.

## Particle *soo*

Explain the meaning of *soo* in the following examples. Could any of these examples involve a **completive** (resultative, perfective) aspect? Is it possible to take away *soo* in these sentences? How does the meaning change if *soo* is taken away?

*Hooyo waxay noo sheegtay kolkuu **soo** cabو waa sidaa... Kolkuu naagtiiسا kale la **soo** dagaalo aniguu cadhada iila yimaadaa...*

*Wuxuu u **soo** noqday saaxibkiis, wuxuuna ku yiri: «Waxaan **soo** arkay meel barwaaqo leh, laakiin waa khatar, maxaa yeelay bahallo ayaa jooga». Wuxuu kula taliyay dameerkii inuu tartiib u **soo** cuno cawska una **soo** cabbo biyaha.*

*Waxay **soo** gaartey goobtii baska lagu sugaayey.*

*Qorsho oo aan hadalkii carabkeeda ka sii dhammaan ayaa albaabka la **soo** garaacay.*

Skillnaden mellan meningarna med inriktning partikel "soo" och de utan är att den som innehåller "soo" ger en tydligare **riktning eller avsikt** i handlingen. Men det är inte en stor skillnad i betydelsen.

## The use of *sii*

- a. *Xayawaankee baa dhex ku hurday?*
  - b. *Xayawaankee baa dhex ku sii hurday?*
- Sentence (b) expresses continuative aspect.

- a. *Xayawaankee baa watay orodkiisii?*
  - b. *Xayawaankee baa sii watay orodkiisii?*
- Is (a) okey? It seems *sii wataa* might be a multi-word lexeme?

- a. *Waa in uu kordhaa ka-qayb-galkooda xagga siyaasadda.*
- b. *Waa in uu sii kordhaa ka-qayb-galkooda xagga siyaasadda.*

## Iterative aspect

Somali verbs with an **iterative** meaning.

*Wuu boodbooday.  
Way cuncuntay.  
Wadadii bay dib u raacraacdya.  
Carsaanyadu way carcarartaa.  
Buuxbuuxi meelaha bannaan.  
Wakhtigu waa isrogrogayaa.  
Cimiladu waa ay is bedbedashaa waqtiga qaboobaha.  
Markaan yaraa waxaan celcelin jirey waxaraha.  
Xasan wuxuu ahaa nin boodbood badan.  
Ninkaas waa nin fürfiirin badan.*

## Somali iterative verbs

Rinjigii buu **marmariyay** derbiga. 'Han strök färg upprepade gånger på väggen.'

Ciirtii buu **ruxruxay**. 'Han skakade filmjölken upprepade gånger.'

## The Rhetorical Mood

*Qalinka maad i siísid?*

1. How would you translate this into Swedish or English?

två olika sätt

**Neutral ton:** Kan du ge mig pennan? / Can you give me the pen?

**Arg/irriterad ton:** Varför ger du mig inte pennan? / Why won't you give me the pen?  
eller Why aren't you giving me the pen?

*Qalinka ma i siísidóo? (lite vänligare)*

2. In what situation can you use this sentence?

Någon har lånat min penna men inte lämnat tillbaka den.

Eller jag harbett någon att låna mig en penna, men personen svarar inte på min fråga.  
I båda fallen **visar frasen viss irritation eller känslomässig reaktion gentemot personen.**

3. Is *ma* interrogative or negative? 4. Is there a high tone on *máad* or not? 5. Where is the high tone on the verb: *siísid* or *siisíd*?

*Qálinka maad i siísid?*

6. Is *aad* optional or obligatory? Can you also say *Qalinka ma i siisid?* with the same meaning?

"Qalinka máad i siisid?" och "Qalinka ma i siisid?" **har två olika betydelser.** "Qalinka máad i siisid?" betyder "Kan du ge mig pennan?" eller "Varför ger du mig inte pennan?" (semantiskt), medan "Qalinka ma i siisid?" betyder "Du ger inte mig pennan."

## Verbs that are not used in the progressive aspect

Vissa verb använder inte i progressiv form med presens betydelse, utan bara i futurumbetydelse.

joogaa                  joogayaa

*Ilaa goorma ayay ciidamada Itoobiya joogayaan Soomaaliya?*

*Hur länge ska de vara i Soamlia?*

*Ilaa goorma ayay ciidamada Itoobiya joogaan Soomaaliya?*

*hur länge har de varit i Somalia? (de är kvar nu)*  
*Ilaa goorma ayay ciidamada Itoobiya **joogeen** Soomaaliya?*  
*hur länge var de i Somalia? (d e är inte kvar nu)*

Some verbs exhibit a variation in the use of the progressive forms, some use them, and some don't. Would you use them? What might be the explanation to this variation?

buk-aa    \*buk-ayaa  
    (wuu bugt-aa                                        wuu bukan-ayaa)

rabaa    \*rabayaa

### **socdaa/soconayaa**

<i>Shir soconayay saddex maalmood.</i>	<i>man ser det lite mera livligt</i>
<i>Shir socday saddex maalmood.</i>	<i>man bara konstaterar efteråt</i>

This verb expresses an event which normally be expressed the progressive aspect

### **karaa/karayaa**

This is a state. The simple present **karaa** is used when the meaning is more general or future:

*Waan cabbi **karaa** caanaha immika.*  
  I can drink milk now.'  
  (Jag kunde inte dricka mjölk tidigare men jag kan dricka mjölk nu.)

Och "karayaa" när man fokuserar mer på dåtiden **nuet?**:

*Waan cabbi **karayaa** caanaha immika.*  
  I can drink milk now.'  
  (Tidigare kunde jag inte dricka mjölk, men jag har börjat dricka mjölk nyligen.)

## Taxis

Sometimes the aspects are used in order to express time relations bewteen two clauses.

*Marka ay masaajidka ka soo **noqdaan** waxa ay cunayaan buskud iyo nacnac.*

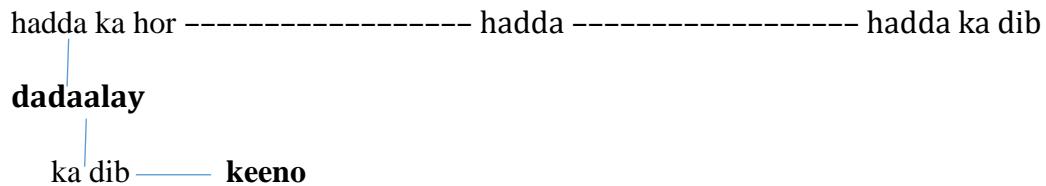
*Marka ay masaajidka ka soo **noqonayaan** waxa ay cunayaan buskud iyo nacnac.*

(One of the above sentences was found in a story under a picture showing some children eating some sweets.)

Main clause: Simple past

Subclause: Simple subjunctive (used in a **relative** manner)

The simple subjunctive *keeno* refers to a moment in time after *dadaalay*.



*Isagu wuu ku dadaalay casharka, si uu imtixaanka dhibco fiican u keeno.*

*Waxaan doonayay in ay ila joogto. laakiin waa ay iga tagtay.*

*Waxaan u safray ilaa iyo Lund, si aan ula kulmo Nur, balse hortay buu dhoofay.*

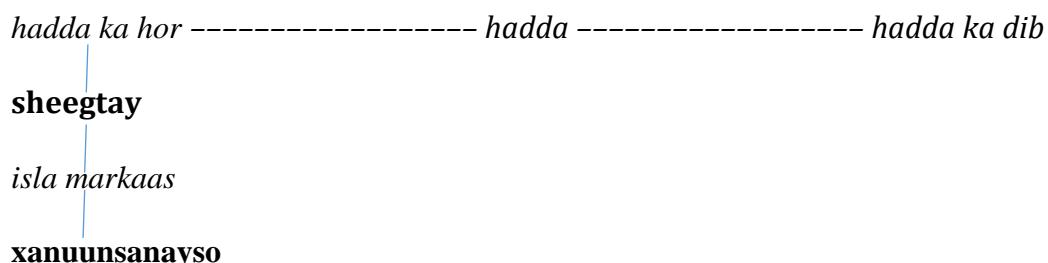
*Wuxuu rabay in ay ka caawiso laylis.*

'Han ville att hon skulle hjälpa honom med läxan.'

Main clause: Simple past

Subclause: Progressive subjunctive (used in a **relative** manner)

The progressive subjunctive *xanuunsanayso* refers to the same moment in time as *sheegtay*.



*Waxaan la hadlay wiiggii hore, waxayna markaa ii sheegtay in ay xanuunsanayso.*

*Waan la hadlay wiiggii hore oo waxay markaa igu tidhi "Wuu bukaa".*

*Waan la hadlay wiiggii hore oo waxay markaa igu tidhi in uu buko.*

Jag pratade med henne i förra veckan och då sa hon att han *var* sjuk.

Does the following sentence mean the same, or is there a difference?

*Iyadaan la hadlay toddobaadkii hore. Markaasay ii sheegtay in ay xanuunsanayd.*

*Waan la hadlay wiiggii hore oo waxay markaa igu tidhi "Wuu bukay".*

*Waan la hadlay wiiggii hore oo waxay markaa igu tidhi in uu bukay.*

What is the difference between the three boys and their situation?

*Xasan wuxuu aaday dugsiga isagoon akhrinayn casharka.*

*Ahmed wuxuu aaday dugsiga isagoon akhrin buugga.*

*Cali wuxuu tegey jaamacadda isagoo akhrinayo dersigiisa.*

What is the difference between the three sentences?

*Wuxuu rabay in ay layliga ka caawiso.*  
*Wuxuu rabay iney layliga ka caawin lahayd.*  
*Wuxuu rabi lahaa, in ay layliga ka caawiso.*

Några frågor

## Future in the past

Can you think of some sentences where the main clauses is in the past tense and the suclause refers to an event that should occur after the event in the main clause in a **relative** manner? How would you for example translate the follwing sentences?

*Han ville att hon skulle hjälpa honom med läxan.*

(*Jag pratade med henne i förra veckan.*)

*Då sa hon att hon skulle resa till Somalia.*

(*Jag tror att hon är där nu.*)

*Han ville att hon skulle hjälpa honom med läxan.*

*Waxa uu rabay in ay ka caawin lahayd layliga. /*

*Isagu waxa uu rabay in ay iyadu ka caawin lahayd layliga.*

(*Jag pratade med henne i förra veckan.*) Då sa hon att hon skulle resa till Somalia.

*Waxa aan la hadlay iyada isbuucii hore markaa oo ay u safri lahayd Soomaaliya. /*

*Aniga ayaa la hadlay iyada isbuucii hore markaas oo ay u safri lahayd Soomaaliya.*

(*Jag tror att hon är där nu.*)

*Waxa aan filayaa in ay halkaa joogto hadda. /*

*Anigu waxa aan filayaa in ay iyadu halkaa joogto hadda.*

# Unit 11

## Non-verbal semantic predicates (< 9)

Some clauses don't describe actions or events, but rather states, qualities, location, possession or existence. In the various languages of the world, the predicate in this type of clauses are not always a verb. Somali has just one type of clause that doesn't contain a verb. Some other languages have many more.

### 11.1 The semantic predicate

An example of a Somali clauses without any verb is the following.

*Sahro <> waa <> aradayad wanaagsan.* OM + OQ + OM  
*Sahro <> waa <> ordaysaa.* OM + OQ + OF

In clauses like this, there is no verb to take the predicate role. Instead, the second noun phrase is considered the predicate. Somali has only this single type of verbless clauses.

If the same type of clause as above is expressed in the past, the **copular verb (linking verb)** *yahay* needs to be used in Somali.

*Sahro <> waxa ay <> ahayd <> aradayad wanaagsan.* NP + PP + VP + NP

It is a common pattern in many languages that the copular verb is not used in the present tense, but it is necessary in other tenses in order to express the tense in question.

Even when there is a copular verb in the clause, the NP still constitutes the **semantic predicate**, since the verb *yahay* has practically no meaning. However, the NP is not the **grammatical predicate** when there is a verb in the clause. The grammatical predicate is the copular verb *yahay*. The NP is instead the complement of the verb, i.e., a **predicate complement**, which behaves like other arguments and adjuncts (objects or adverbials) of verbs expressing actions or events. This is so because the predicate complement can move and also be focused by *waxa*, *ayaa* or *baa*.

When a NP is the predicate of a clause, it can only be focused by *waa*, just like verb predicates.

*Sahro <> waxa ay <> ahayd <> ardayad.*  
*Sahro <> waxa ay <> ahayd <> ardayad.*  
*Sahro <> waa <> ardayad.*

In many other languages, there is a number of other types of verbless clauses. Such clauses often describe a quality, location or possession. In such sentences the quality,

position or possession is the **semantic predicate** of the clause. Languages however express such clauses in various ways.

POSSESSIVE CLAUSES	LOCATIVE CLAUSE
(Russian)	
<i>U menyaa voproos.</i>	<i>Müüi dooma.</i>
ag aniga weydiin	annaga guriga
'Weydiin baan leeyahay.'	'Guriga baannu joognaa.'
(Arabic)	
<i>Cindii su'aalun.</i>	<i>Naxnu fil manzili.</i>
agtayda weydiin	annaga ku hooyga
'Weydiin baan leeyahay.'	'Guriga baannu joognaa.'

### 11.1.1 Equative clauses

In equative clauses, the semantic predicate is a noun or a noun phrase. Equative clauses express that the subject is identical with the predicate complement or that the subject can be described through the predicate complement.

<i>Sahro ◊ waa ◊ aradayad wanaagsan.</i>	NP + PP + NP
<i>Jaamac ◊ waa ◊ wasiirka difaaca.</i>	
<i>Jaamac ◊ waa ◊ arday.</i>	

The same Somali clauses may also be expressed with the special particle *weeye/waaye* that has probably emerged through contraction of *waa+yahay*.

<i>Sahro ◊ aradayad wanaagsan ◊ weeye.</i>	OM + OM + OQ/OF
< waa + yahay/tahay	OQ + OF

How does word order differ between clauses with *waa* and *weeye*? Why?

<i>Sahro ◊ aradayad wanaagsan ◊ weeye.</i>	
<i>*Sahro ◊ aradayad wanaagsan ◊ waa.</i>	
<i>*Weeye ◊ aradayad wanaagsan ◊ Sahro.</i>	
<i>Waa ◊ aradayad wanaagsan ◊ Sahro.</i>	
<i>Aradayad wanaagsan ◊ weeye ◊ Sahro.</i>	
<i>(*)Aradayad wanaagsan ◊ waa ◊ Sahro.</i>	

This structure may also occur with the final focus particle *waxa*.

*Tallabada labaad ◊ waxa weeye ◊ dhalashada.*

The word *waxa/waxaa* may also occur as the subject. Or is it the particle also here?

*Waxaana* <> *weeye* <> *webi Jubba*.

If the same type of clause is expressed in the past, the **copular verb (likning verb)** *yahay* has to be used.

*Sahro* <> *waxa ay* <> *ahayd* <> *aradayad wanaagsan*.      NP + PP + VP + NP  
*Sahro* <> *aradayad wanaagsan* <> *ayaa ay* <> *ahayd*.      NP + NP + PP + VP

It is a common pattern in many languages that the copula is not used in the present tense, but it is necessary in other tenses in order to express the tense in question.

However, also in the present tense, the same structure with the copula verb *yahay* is also possible when the semantic predicate is focused.

*Sahro* <> *waxa ay* <> *tahay* <> *aradayad wanaagsan*.      NP + PaP + VP + NP  
*Sahro* <> *aradayad wanaagsan* <> *ayaa ay* <> *tahay*.      NP + NP + PaP + VP

When the noun in the predicate complement is indefinite, equative clauses often becomes semantically quite similar to attributive clauses.

*Dibaddu waa qabow/madow.*

'Outside it's cold/dark.'

*Bisaddu waa yar tahay.*

'The cat is small.'

### 11.1.2 Attributive clauses

In attributive clauses, the semantic predicate is an adjective. It describes the subject of the clause. If an adjective is the semantic predicate, the copular verb *yahay* always has to be used. Together, the adjective and the verb constitute the grammatical predicate. The adjective always immediately precedes the copular verb in the verb phrase.

*Aradayaddu* <> *waa ay* <> *wanaagsan tahay*.      NP + PP + VP  
*Aradayaddu* <> *waa* <> *wanaagsan tahay*.  
*Jaamac* <> *waa uu* <> *dheer yahay*.  
*Jaamac* <> *waa* <> *dheer yahay*.

This type of clause behaves more or less as any other Somali clause with an intransitive action verb, e.g., *Jaamac* <> *waa uu* <> *ordayaa*, with the only difference that there is more of a tendency to omit the short subject pronoun in clauses with an adjectival predicate than in other kinds of clauses containing verb predicates.

Notice the contractions of the adjective and the copular verb, e.g.

<i>Daallo waa ay fiicnayd waagii hore.</i>	< fiican+ahayd
<i>Geeddi waa uu wanaagsanaa yaraantiisii.</i>	< wanaagsan+ahaan

### 11.1.3 Other verbs in equative and attributive clauses

Other verbs that take a **predicate complement**.

*Mary became very sick.*

*Mary became a world-famous poet.*

*John seems very angry.*

Such verbs in Somali are *noqdaa...*

... *wuxuuna hadda u muuqdaa nin daaqadda laga tuuray...*

'now he looks like a man who has been thrown out the window'

... *waxa uu noqday diyaar.*

'... he became ready.'

English grammar also acknowledge an **object predicate complement** that tells something about the object of the clause.

*I consider John honest.*

*I consider John my friend.*

*They all consider me crazy.*

*We elected John chairman of the board.*

In Somali the corresponding verbs simply behave like any other verb, and the predicate complement requires a preposition. Therefore there is not much reason to emphasise a special category of object predicate complements in Somali.

*Waxay guddoomiye u doorteen Cabdirisaaq Axmed Olol*

### 11.1.4 Locative clauses

Locative clauses indicate the position of the subject of the clause.

The semantic predicate is an noun expressing a place/position.

*On doma.* (Russian)

isaga guri.ku.dhex

'Guriga buu joogaa.'

*On byl doma.* (Russian)

isaga ahaa guri.ku.dhex

'Guriga buu joogay.'

Somali uses *joogaa* (mainly about people) or *yaallaa, jiraa* (mainly about objects) in many/most locative clauses.

### 11.1.5 Possessive clauses

In many languages, clauses that express possession are very similar to locative clauses.

*U menya novaya mashina.* (Russian)  
agta aniga cusub baabuur  
'Waxaan leeyahay baabuur cusub.'

Somali uses a predicate verb in possessive clauses, but makes difference between different verbs: *leeyahay, leedahay; hayaa, haysaa; haystaa, haysataa*.

*Shimbiraha oo dhammi waxa ay leeyihii baalal, laba lugood iyo afaf kala duwan...*  
*Gabadhu waxa ay haysataa boorso yar.*

*Iskuul/Cashar baan leeyahay maanta. Dhakhtar/Ballan baan leeyahay.*

What is the difference in meaning between the two verbs: ownership / dispose of sth., use sth.??

### 11.1.6 Existential clauses

Many languages have special verbs or constructions that express the existence of a person or object. Swedish uses *finns, existerar*, English *there is/are, exists*, and Somali has *jiraa*.

*Waxaa jira shimbiro waaweyn iyo kuwo yar yar. Waxa jira kuwo midabbo leh iyo kuwo aan lahayn, inkasta oo aanay isu ekeyn dhammaantood.*

*Waddankeenna waxaa jira laba nooc oo taleefoonno ah.*

## 11.2 Predicate adjuncts

A predicate complement is an obligatory part of the clause, a depictive predicate adjunct is not.

*Henry arrived to the trial **drunk**. / Henry arrived to the trial.  
Susan served the vegetables **raw**. / Susan served the vegetables.*

Predicate adjuncts can often be moved, but predicate complements cannot be moved.

*Mary ran from the room, ashamed of herself.*

*Mary, ashamed of herself, ran from the room.*

*Woolsey, as a loyal officer, refused to join the rebellion.*

*As a loyal officer, Woolsey refused to join the rebellion.*

It is also possible to have two predicate adjuncts in the same clause, but not two predicate complements.

In Somali, predicate adjuncts are expressed by the conjunction *oo* followed by an adjective or a relative clause.

*Henry wuxuu yimid maxkamadda **isagoo sarkhaansan**.*

*Henry wuxuu yimid dacwada **isagoo cabsan***

*Susan waxay soo dhigatay khudradda **oo cayriin ah***

*Susan waxay soo dhigatay khudrad **cayriin ah***

*Susan waxay soo dhigatay khudradda **cayriinka ah***

*Mary qolkay ka carartay **iyadoo ceebaysan / is ceebsatay / is ceebsanaysa**.*

*Mary qolkay ka carartay **iyadoo isku xishootay**.*

*Mary ayaa ka carartay qolka **iyadoo isku xishoonaysa**.*

*Mary qolka ayay ka carartay **iyadoo isceebsanaysa**.*

*Sidii sarkaal daacad ah, Woosley wuxuu diiday inuu ku biiro kacdoonka.*

*Sida sarkaal daacad ah, Woosley wuu diiday inuu ku biiro fallaagada.*

*Woolsey wuu diiday in ku biiro jabhadda **isagoo ah sarkaal daacad ah**.*

## 11. Terminology

Semantic predicate, predicate complement, subject predicate complement, object predicate complement, predicate adjunct, equative clause, attributive clause, locative clause, possessive clause, existential clause, impersonal clause, indefinite agent clause

## 11. Additional reading

Read: Kroeger (2005), Chapter 10, pages 173–190.

## 11. Old Exercises

1. Can you think of equative clauses where *waa*, *weeye* and *waxa weeye* are not freely interchangeable? If possible, give example sentence with all three variants, and mark the ungrammatical sentences with a star in front of the sentence. (If some of you consider a sentence grammatical and others consider it ungrammatical, you should mark it with a question mark in front of the sentence.)

2 Can you say something about the difference in meaning between the three types of constructions, with *waa*, *weeye* or *waxa weeye*?

3 There is also a form from *weeyaan*. How is that form used? Give three examples and try to explain how this form is used.

4 Can equative clauses in the past tense be expressed without focus (*waxa, baa, ayaa*), with the basic sentence particle *waa*, parallel to the present tense *Sahra waa ardayad wanaagsan?*

5 Translate these examples, that in English contain a subject predicate complement. Do the translations contain a subject predicate complement in Somali?

*Mary became very sick.*

*Mary became a world-famous poet.*

*John seems very angry.*

6 Can you think of any other Somali verbs that require a **subject** predicate complement. If so, give max. three example sentences with different verbs.

7 Translate the examples, that in English contain an object predicate complement. Do the translations contain an object predicate complement in Somali?

*I consider John honest.*

*I consider John my friend.*

*They all consider me crazy.*

*We elected John chairman of the board.*

8 Can you think of any other Somali verbs that require an **object** predicate complement. If so, give max. three example sentences with different verbs.

9 Give examples of three (or more) different types Somali **locative** clauses, if possible with different verbs. What is the difference between the verbs? Can they be freely interchanged, or are there any restrictions or differences in their meaning?

10 Give examples of three (or more) different types Somali **possessive** clauses, if possible with different verbs. What is the difference between the verbs? Can they be freely interchanged, or are there any restrictions or differences in their meaning?

11 Give examples of three (or more) different types Somali **existential** clauses, if possible with different verbs. What is the difference between the verbs? Can they be freely interchanged, or are there any restrictions or differences in their meaning?

12 Translate into Somali.

*Henry arrived to the trial **drunk**.*

*Susan served the vegetables **raw**.*

*Mary ran from the room, **ashamed of herself**.*

*As a loyal officer, Woolsey refused to join the rebellion.*

13 Give three quite different examples of impersonal Somali clauses.

14 Give two different examples of indefinite agent clauses, one irrealis clause, and one realis clause, i.e. one clause where the subject doesn't have any specific referent, and one where there is a specific referent that is not revealed.

## Discussion 2022 (< 9)

viktigt/intressant

mina anteckningar

oklart/märkligt

### weeye

Are *waa*, *weeye* and *waxa weeye* freely interchangeable?

*Waxa weeye maalin wanaagsan.*

*Maanta waxaa weeye maalin wanaagsan.*

*Waa maalin wanaagsan.*

*Maanta waa maalin wanaagsan.*

*Maanta maalin wanaagsan weeye.*

*Maalin wanaagsan weeye.*

\**Weeye maalin wanaagsan.*

*Weeye* cannot be the first word in a clause.

*Faarax waa nin wanaagsan.*

*Faarax waxa weeye nin wanaagsan*

*Faarax nin wanaagsan weeye.*

?*Faarax weeye nin wanaagsan.*

\**Faarax nin wanaagsan waa.*

\**Faarax nin wanaagsan waxa weeye.*

*Waa* cannot be the last word in a clause, it must be followed by the predicate.

*Waxa*: has to be followed by the predicate and the clause has to end with a noun phrase.

*Ninka wanaagsani waa Faarax.*

*Ninka wanaagsani waxa weeye Faarax.*

?*Ninka wanaagsani weeye Faarax*

*Daallo waa buur dheer.*

*Daallo waxa weeye buur dheer.*

?*Daallo buur dheer weeye.*

\**Daallo weeye buur dheer.*

*waa NP*

*waxa weeye NP*

*NP weeye*

?*weeye NP*

\**NP waxa weeye*

\**NP waa*

NP waa NP  
NP waxa weeye NP  
NP NP weeye  
?NP weeye NP  
\*NP NP waxa weeye  
\*NP NP waa

Is there any difference in meaning between *waa*, *weeye* and *waxa weeye*?

*Waa maalin wanaagsan.*  
*Waxa weeye maalin wanaagsan.*  
*Maalin wanaagsan weeye.*

*Faarax waa qoffiicaan .*  
*Faarax waxa weeye qoffiicaan.*  
*Faarax qoffiicaan weeye .*

Det finns ingen skillnad i alla tre meningarna.

Daallo waxa weeye buur dheer.

**Waxa weeye** seems to be stronger than *waa*

How is *weeyaan* used?  
Antyder att man vill ha sista ordet, att ingen annan ska ifrågasätta.

Yuusuf hogaamiye wanaagsan weeyaan.  
Yuusuf waxaa weeyaan nin dheer.  
Gabar qurxoon weeyaan.  
Iyada waxa weeyaan gashaanti.  
Isaga waxa weeyaan barbaar.

Waxa **weeyaan** <> in <> xal degdeg ah <> laga gaadho <> arrinka.  
Sidaas oo kale <> **weeyaan** <> arrinku.  
Difaaca dalku <> waajib <> **weeyaan**.

Partikel **weeyaan** fungerar samma som partikel **weeye**

*Daallo buur dheer weeyaan.*  
\**Daallo weeyaan buur dheer.*  
*Daallo waxa weeyaan buur dheer*

Weeyaan seems to mean like *weeye* but it feels stronger, more definitive.

*Dad xun weeye.*  
*Dad xun weeyaan.*

## Equative clauses

Equative clauses in the past tense may contain any of the focus particles *waxa*, *baa*, *ayaa*, *waa*.

*Sahra waa ardayaddii wanaagsaneyd.*

*Sahra waa ardayaddii diiday.*

*Sahra waxa ay ahayd ardayad wanaagsan.*

*Sahra ardayad wanaagsan baa/ayaa ay ahayd.*

*Sahra way ahayd ardayad wanaagsan.*

*Sahraa ahayd ardayad wanaagsan.*

Ekvativa satser måste innehålla någon fokuspartikel.

## Predicate complement

English subject predicate complements. Is it a subject predicate complement in Somali?

*Mary became very sick.*

*Mary became a world-famous poet.*

*John seems very angry.*

the verb noqdaa behaves like in English, it takes a complement.

*Mary waxay noqotay mid aad u jirran.*

*Maryan waxay noqotay qof aad u xanuunsan.*

*Maryan waxay noqotay gabyaa adduunka caan ka ah.*

*Mary waxay noqotay gabyaa dunida laga yaqaan.*

*Mary waxay noqotay gabyaa dunida caan ka ah.*

*Mary waxay noqotay gabayaa caan ka ah aduunka.*

But other solutions are also possible: a distinct verb.

*Mary aad bay u jirratay.*

Other Somali verbs usually require a preposition.

*John wuxuu u muuqdaa mid aad u xanaaqsan.*

*Joon wuxuu u muuqdaa qof aad u caraysan.*

*John wuxuu u eyyahay qof u xanaaqsan aad.*

*John wuxuu u muuqdaa inuu aad u xanaaqsan yahay.*

*Madaxweynuhu wuxuu u eyyahay daacad.*

*Cali waxaan u arkaa qof wanaagsan. 'Jag ser/upplever Ali som en bra person.'*

*Xaawo waxaan u haystaa walaal dhab ah. 'Jag anser Ali vara en bra person.'*

*Sheekadan waxaan u fahmay mid run ah.*

*Maryan waxa ay isu beddeshay siyaasiyad caalami ah.*

*Miigane wuxuu iskadhigay oday dhaqameed.*

English object predicate complements. Is it an object predicate complement in Somali?

*I consider John honest.*  
*I consider John my friend.*  
*They all consider me crazy.*  
*We elected John chairman of the board.*

*Waxaan u arkaa inuu John daacad yahay.*  
*Waxaan u arkaa in uu John daacadyahay.*  
*Waxaan u haystaa John qof daacad ah.*

*Waxaan qabaa “John waa saaxiibkay.”*  
*Waxaan u arkaa John saaxiibkay.*  
*Waxaan u arkaa John saaxiibkay.*  
*Waxaan u haystaa John saaxiibkayga*

*Dhammaantood waxay ii haystaan qof waalan.*  
*Idilkood waxay ii arkaan qof dhimman.*  
*Gidigood waxay ii qabaan qof qaca.*  
*Dhamaantood waxay ii arkaan sidii qof waalan.*  
*Dadka dhan waxay ii haystaan nin waalan.*

*Waxaan u doorannay John guddoomiyaha guddiga.*  
*Waxaan u dooranay John hogaamiyaha golaha.*  
*Waxaanu u dooranay John gudoomiyaha gudiga.*  
*Waxaanu u doorannay John madaxa guddiga.*

Are there other Somali verbs with an **object** predicate complement?

*Wuxuu iga dhigay qof jira intaan noolaa oo dhan.*  
*Wuxuu u ekaa qof ibtilaysan.*  
*Taliyuhu wuxuu i dhirbaaxay anigoo daacad ah.*  
*Soomaaliya waxaa loo yaqaan waddan hodan ah.*  
*Maxamed waxaan u aaminsanahay nin wanaagsan.*  
*Cabdalla waxaan u haystaa nin wanaagsan.*  
*Muqtaar waxaa loo tixgaliyaa sidii boqor oo kale.*  
*Waxaan u maleeyay in Geedseexde iman doono*  
*Toonto waxay u dhigantaa cusbada dhanka dhadhanka.*  
*Waxaan u arkaa in Heybe khaldanaa hadaaya.*

## Locative clauses

What is the difference between the verbs?

*Lacagtu waxay taallaa miiska hoostiisa.*  
fokuserar på platsen  
*Lacagtu waxay ku jirtaa miiska hoostiisa.*  
fokuserar på att de finns, ifall någon trodde att de inte finns.

*Kubbaddu waxay ku **dhex jirtaa** berkedda.*

*Kubbaddu waxay **dhex taallaa** berkedda.*

*Kubbaddu waxay **dhex taallaa** berkedda.*

*Ninku wuxuu joogaa guriga.                              är hemma*

*Ninku wuxuu yaallaa guriga. (sjuk)                  ?? ligger hemma*

*Ninku wuxuu yaallaa cusbitaalka.                      ligger på sjukhus*

*Reerku wuxuu yaallaa baadiyaha. (bor)    regionalt i norr    "befinner sig"*

*Reerku wuxuu deggan yahay baadiyaha              lite mera bestående??*

*Gurigu wuxuu ku **yaallaa bartamaha***

*Garoonku wuxuu **dhacaa dugsiga gadaashiisa.***

They are interchangeable without changing the meaning.

*Ilmaha yari xoolka ayuu ku **jiraa.***

*?Ilmaha yari xoolka ayuu **yaallaa***

*Miisku bartamaha qolka buu **yaallaa.**              \***jiraa***

*\*Miisku bartamaha qolka buu **yahay***

*Kubaddu saqafka ayay dul **saarantahay / taallaa***

*\*Kubaddu saqafka ayay dul **jirtaa***

*Cuntadu waxay ku **dhex jirtaa bacda***

*Alaabtu waxay **taallaa geedka hoostiisa***

*Guuleed wuxuu deggan yahay **dugsiga gadaashiisa**    **yaalaa, joogaa, jiraa ???***

## Possessive clauses

if possible with different verbs. What is the difference between the verbs? Can they be freely interchanged, or are there any restrictions or differences in their meaning?

### qabaa, leeyahay/leh, haystaa

1. Wuxaan qabaa hanti.

2. Wuxaan haystaa xoolo.

3. Sahro waxay leedahay suul dheer.

Example 1 and 2 describes **actual ownership**, while the third example may describe a **physical possession**.

Yes, they are interchangeable and there are no restrictions or differences in the meaning.

1.Ninku cudur buu **qabaa.**

1.Ninku cudur buu **leeyahay.\***

- 1.Ninku cudur buu **haystaa**.\*
2. Xasan hanti buu **leeyahay**. **qabaa ???**
- 2.Xasan hanti buu **haystaa**
- 3.Lacag baan **haystaa** **leeyahay ???**
- 3.Lacag baan **qabaa**.\*

Wuxuu leeyahay baaskiil cusub.

Waxay haysataa ilmo badan.

Waxaa **u jooga** xoolo kala duwan

## Existential clauses

if possible with different verbs. What is the difference between the verbs? Can they be freely interchanged, or are there any restrictions or differences in their meaning?

- **Jiraa, taal, leh,**

1. Wax roob ah ma **jiro** gugan.
2. Suuqa khudaar ma **taallo**.
3. **Ma leh** cunto maanta. Ma laha = ma jirto

Ciyaari ma jirto.

Cunto ma jirtaa? Finns det nån mat?

Cunto ma ku jirtaa? Finns det mat där?

**Jiraa, taal, leh** these three verbs are interchangeable without restrictions or differences in the meaning.

- 1.Waxaa **dhacaysa** cayaar fiican.
1. Waxaa **jirta** cayaar fiican
2. Wixa **jirta** hawo wanaagsan.
2. Wixa **socota** hawo wanaagsan.
3. Wixa **dhacaysa** hawo fiican.

jira, dhaca, leh

Gurigu biyo ma lahan

Waxaa jira hawo qabow

Waxa dhaca dabaylo xilliyada qaar

## Unit 12

# Sentence types, Negation & Word order (< 10)

In certain types of clauses the subject pronoun is optional. This is the case in:

- certain types of interrogative clauses

*Adiga iyo waalidkaa **ma** booqataan suuqa?*

*Adiga iyo waalidkaa **maad** booqataan suuqa? < ma+aad*

*Adiga iyo waalidkaa **miyaad** booqataan suuqa? < ma+aad*

Efter frågeord behövs normalt ett subjektspronomen.

*Adigu suuqa **maxaad** ku aragtag?*

*\*Adigu suuqa **maxaa** ku aragtag?*

- most types of negative clauses

*Weligay Berbera **ma** arag...*

*Weligay **maan** arag meel miyi ah.*

*Weligay **ma aan** arag iyada...*

### 12.1 Sentence types

Sentences have a form (a syntactic structure) and a purpose. The purpose is referred to as a SPEECH ACT. (Notice that all the speech acts and clause types may occur as positive as well as negative ones.)

MEANING	FORM / GRAMMAR
SPEECH ACT	SYNTACTIC CLAUSE TYPE
statement	declarative clause
question	interrogative clause
command, request	imperative clause
prohibition, warning	negative imperative / prohibitive clause
wish	optative clause

When a speech act is expressed through its corresponding syntactic form, the speech act is referred to as a DIRECT SPEECH ACT.

Quite often a speech act is expressed through another syntactic sentence structure than the expected one. Such speech acts are referred to as INDIRECT SPEECH ACTS.

An interrogative clause can be used as a command (speech act).

*Why don't you just be quite?*

Also in Somali, there are numerous examples of INDIRECT speech acts. Here are a few examples of different types of mismatches between SYNTACTIC CLAUSE TYPE and INTENDED SPEECH ACT.

Grammatically: Interrogative clause > Speech act: Statement

***Yaa dan ka leh?*** > Macnaha: 'Qofna dan kama laha.'

***Maxaa iga galay?*** > Macnaha: 'Waxba igama gelin.'

***Yaa kala jecel?*** > Macnaha: ingen bryr sig.

**Detta är retoriska frågor. Man väntar sig inte något svar.**

Grammatically: Interrogative clause > Speech act: Command

***Maxaad u fadhidaa meesha?*** > Macnaha: 'Kac.'

***Ma naga aamusi kartaa?*** > Macnaha: Aammus.

Grammatically: Interrogative Optative clause > Speech act: Command

***Iskuulka maad tagtid?*** > Macnaha: 'Iskuulka aad.'

Grammatically: Interrogative clause > Speech act: Uppmaning att sluta

***Yaad u sheegaysaa?*** < Macnaha: 'Ha ii sheegin.'

Grammatically: Optative clause > Speech act: Warning, Negative wish

Halkaa aan kuugu imaaddo! (varning) = Yaanan kuugu iman halkaa. (hot)

Den första kan tolkas på två sätt: bokstavligt eller retoriskt.

Halkaa aan kaa waayo = Yaan kaa waayin halkaa.

Grammatically: Prohibitive clause (negative imperative) > Speech act: Question

***Ha i oran waan soo hilmaamay!*** > Macnaha: 'Ma soo hilmaantay?'

**QUESTION:** Can you think of any other types of mismatches between grammatical clause type and speech act in Somali?

## 12.2 Basic word order

In many languages, word order is used to give special prominence a certain part of a sentence, to mark focus (new information) or topic (what the sentence is about, the point of departure). The basic word order does not mark any such prominence, whereas all other possible word orders will mark some kind of prominence.

The basic word order is typically (Bickford 1998):

- the most frequent word order,
- used in positive statements with no focus,
- used in sentences with NP's as the subject and the object,
- used in subordinate clauses,
- used in most types of sentences and contexts.

Somali has a generally quite free word order, based mostly on INFORMATION STRUCTURE or INFORMATION PACKAGING.

*Cali iskuulka wuu arkay. (SOV)*  
*Cali wuu arkay iskuulka. (SVO)*

*Cali wuxuu siiyay hadiyad macallinkiisa. (SVO<sub>1</sub>O<sub>2</sub>)*  
*Hadiyad ayaa Cali siiyay macallinkiisa. (O<sub>1</sub>SVO<sub>2</sub>)*  
*Macallinkiisa ayuu Cali siiyay hadiyad. (O<sub>2</sub>SVO<sub>1</sub>)*  
*Wuxuu Cali siiyay macallinkiisa hadiyad. (SVO<sub>2</sub>O<sub>1</sub>)*

The most common and most basic word order is generally considered to be **SOV**. However, there isn't really any reliable statistical data that underpins this claim. It is only based on theoretical considerations.

Certain past tense clauses use a short past tense form of the verb without any suffix and with heavy vowels. These clauses don't contain any particle phrase (sentence particle and subject pronoun) and they may very well begin with the verb.

*Teg Cali gurigii.* ‘Ali went home.’  
*Cali teg gurigii.*

*Ayax teg, eelna reeb.*

## 12.3 Commands

Command speech acts are usually expressed through imperative clauses.

Typically, an imperative clause

- contains no word expressing the subject (you),
- the imperative verb form has no ending, it equals the stem of the verb,
- the imperative mood forms do not distinguish between different tenses,
- the imperative verb forms only have inflection for number.

Some languages have imperative forms also for the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person. Other languages have other constructions instead, such as the optative (*May he win!*) or hortative (*Let's eat!*).

Most languages have various strategies in order to soften a command or make it more polite. (*Please call me tomorrow. Could you pass me the salt, please? Could I borrow your pen? It's quite cold in here!*)

Somali imperatives mainly behave like in most other languages. There are separate imperative forms for the second person singular and plural, respectively.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>keen</i>	<i>keena</i>
<i>aamus</i>	<i>aamusa</i>
<i>akhri</i>	<i>akhriya</i>
<i>Wax cun!</i>	<i>Wax cuna!</i>

In the 3 person and in the 1<sup>st</sup> person plural, OPTATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS are used instead.

*Wax ha cuno.*

*Wax ha cunto.*

*Wax ha cunaan* (traditionellt: *cuneen*).

Also in the 1st person, the OPTATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS are used. Optative består av verb I konjunktiv tillsammans med subjektspronomen.

*Faadumo, Xaawa, kaalaya! Aan ciyaarno dhuumaalaysi.*

*aan orodno aan baxno*

*Aan tago!*

With a few verbs of motion, the 2<sup>nd</sup> person imperative is used with the 1<sup>st</sup> person object pronoun. The effect is that the grammatical form is 2<sup>nd</sup> person (singular or plural), but the intended speech act refers to the 1<sup>st</sup> person plural.

*Ina kiciya! Ina wada! Ina keen! Ina keena!*

For negative commands, i.e. prohibitions and warnings, special PROHIBITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS with the particle *ha* are used for the 2<sup>nd</sup> person.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Waxba ha keenin!</i>	<i>Waxba ha keenina!</i>
<i>Ha soo noqonin!</i>	<i>Ha soo noqonina!</i>
<i>Ha cunin hilibka!</i>	<i>Ha cunina hilibka!</i>
<i>Ha soo qaadin!</i>	<i>Ha soo qaadina!</i>
<i>Ha u tegin!</i>	<i>Ha u tegina!</i>
<i>Sarriirtan ha ku seexan!</i>	<i>Sarriirtan ha ku seexanina!</i>

Negative commands in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person are expressed through the negative optative construction with the particle *yaa* followed by the short subject pronoun and the negative particle *aan*.

*Yuusan ila hadlin.*

*Yaanay illoobin.*

Commands can be made softer or more polite through various strategies.

Additional words expressing politeness, e.g. *fadlan*, *adigoo raali ah*, *walaal*, *abaayo*, *aboowe*, *huuno*, etc.

*Fadlan soo kaca!*  
*Walaal aamus!*  
*Fadlan irridda fur.*  
*Walaal keen qalinkaa.*  
*Adigoo raalli ah keen.*

The command (speech act) may be expressed through an interrogative clause.

*Ma i siin kartaa qalinka adiga oo raali ah.*  
Ma samayn kartaa sidaas adoo raali ah?  
Ma ii dhiibi kartaa qalinka?

## 12.4 Questions

Questions are typically expressed as interrogative sentences. There are three different types.

- |                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| – Yes-No questions      | Would you like some coffee?               |
| – Content questions     | What would you like to drink?             |
| – Alternative questions | Would you like some coffee or some tea?   |
| – Tag questions         | You would like some coffee, wouldn't you? |

### 12.4.1 Yes-No questions

Also called **polar questions** or **closed questions**.

Typologically, yes-no questions are typically express through intonation, a question particle, a verb affix, changes in word order, or a combination of these.

If a question particle is used, its position is usually sentence initial, sentence final, or after the first word or phrase of the sentence. It may also attach to a specific part of the sentence. It may also help express the focus of the sentence.

Typical Somali yes-no questions without focus contain the question particle *ma* right before the verb phrase.

*Cali ma cabbaa sigaarka?*  
*Ma cabbaa Cali sigaarka?*  
*Sigaarka ma cabbaa Cali?*  
*Ma furi kartaa albaabka?*

**Ma i taqaannaan?**  
**Ma joogtaa?**  
**Saalax ma aaday suuqa?**

The question particle may optionally be followed by the short subject pronoun, in which case the particle changes to *miy-*.

*Cali miyuu cabbaa sigaarka?* < ma+uu  
*Miyuu cabbaa Cali sigaarka?*  
*Sigaarka miyuu cabbaa Cali?*  
*Miyaad joogtaa?* < ma+aad  
*Miyuu yimid Maxamed?*  
*Gabadhu hadiyad miyay keenaysaa?* < ma+ay

I Bari kommer subjektspronomenet ofta sist i frågan.

### Exempel

Yes-no questions with focus may contain any of the three focus particles *baa*, *ayaa* or *waxaa*, together with the question particle *ma*. The focus particle *ayaa* is obligatorily contracted with the questions particle *ma*, giving *miyaa*.

*Cali miyaad la hadlaysaa?*  
**Ma Cali baa la hadlaysaa?**  
**Ma waxaad la hadlaysaa Cali?**  
**Waxa aad la hadlaysaa ma Cali baa?**  
**Qofka aad la hadlaysaa Cali miyaa?**  
**Ma macallimad baa Caashi?**  
**Caashi macallimad miyaa?**

With focus on the subject:

**Ma Xasan baa yimid?**  
**Adiga miyaa furay albaabka?**  
**Odaygii miyaa ka tegaya magaalada?**  
**Gabadhii miyaa buug keenaysa?**

Another easy way to change a declarative clause into a question is to add *miyaa* after the declarative clause. The focus particle remains the same as in the declarative clause.

*Sidaas ayaad ii neceb tahay miyaa?*

In particular, this is a convenient way of changing a negative declarative clause into a question.

**Ma kuu sheegin miyaa?**  
**Maba ogid miyaa?**

Another way of changing a negative declarative clause into a question is by adding the particle *sow*.

*Ninka guriga yimid sow adiga **ma** aha?*

A third way to produce a negative question is to add the negation *aan* to a positive interrogative clause and change the verb into the reduced subjunctive.

*Lacagtii miyay kuu timid adiga?*  
*Miyaanay lacagtii kuu iman adiga?*

Finally, it is also possible to use intonation in order to make a negative declarative clause express a question speech act.

*Saalax ma uu aadin suuqa?*

## 12.4.2 Content questions

Also called **wh-questions**, or **open questions**.

These questions contain a question word. Typologically, the question word occurs at the beginning of the question (referred to as **question word fronting**) or in the same position as the words that constitute the answer would occur in a statement with basic word order (referred to as **question word in situ**).

In Somali the question word typically occurs at the beginning of the clause. Typically, the question word of phrase is focused.

*Goorma ayaad soo gashay guriga?*  
*Ninmaa yimid? < Ninma ayaa yimid?*  
*Kumaa yimid?*

If the question word is the head of a phrase, the focus particle follows after the whole phrase.

*Immisa bilood ayaa ku jirta sannadka?*

However, after the suffix *-ee* the focus particle is optional. The suffix *-ee* may itself express focus, e.g. *xaggee, halkee, meeshee, markee, sidee, kee, tee, kuwee*, etc.

*Sidee (ayaa) lagugu qaabilay xafiiska?*  
*Xaggee (ayaad/ayay) ku socotaa?*

The two question words maxaa and yaa contain the focus morpheme *-aa*. These words are historically contractions of maxay+baa > *maxaa* and ayo+baa > *ayaa* > *yaa*.

*Maxaa laguu sheegay?*  
*Yaad u timid halkan?*

However, the question word may also occur inside the clause, *in situ*.

### Example

#### 12.4.3 Alternative questions

Alternative questions offer two or more alternatives to choose between.

*Do you want some coffee or not?*

*Do you want some coffee or some tea or just water?*

*Does it rain or snow?*

Typical alternative questions are expressed in Somali through the use of *mise* or *ama*.

*Ma waxaad raabtaa biyo mise shaah?*

*Ma waxaad doonaysaa bun mise shaah?*

*Ma tagagysaa mise waad joogaysaa?*

*Ma ku siiyaa shaah ama qaxwo mise waxaan ku siiyaa cabitaan?*

*Baasto ama bariis?*

*Diid ama doon?*

#### 12.4.4 Tag questions

Tag questions seek confirmation

*You speak Swahili, don't you?*

Somali has a couple of different tags: *sow ma aha?*, *sax?*, *sax miyaa?*, *sow sax ma aha?*, colloquially also *sow ma ahan?*

*Ninka guriga waa adiga, sow ma aha?*

*Ardaydii way kuu yimideen sow ma ahan?*

*Waa dhakhtar, sax?*

*Waa dhakhtar, sax miyaa?*

*Waa dhakhtar, sow sax ma aha?*

*Waad aragtay, **maahin**?*

*Waad ku hadashaa Carabiga, sow ma ahan?*

*.... miyaanay ahayn?*

*... sow sidaa ma aha?*

### 12.5 Negation

Some languages have only one strategy for marking negative sentences, such as English *not*. Other languages may have different strategies in different types of sentences.

Somali has different strategies for turning sentences into negative ones.

Ma

Qaahira **ma** tagto.

Libaax **ma** arkin

focus + negation

Axmed baa aan u dhoofin magaalada Hargeysa.

Axmed **baanan** u dhoofin magaalada Hargeysa.

Bisatser

...in **aanu** arkin...

Prohibitive (negative imperative) is expressed through the particle ha followed by the reduced subjunctive.

Shaqada si fiican **ha** u qabanina!

Buugga **ha** kala furin

Not all negative words turn a sentence into a negative sentence.

negative clause: *This work is not finished.*

positive clause: *This work is unfinished.*

negative clause: *Jag lyckades inte med uppgiften.*

positive clause: *Jag misslyckades med uppgiften.*

Somali also has certain negative words that do not make the clause negative.

obetalda, otur, icke-rökare

nasiibdarro, la', hogaansamin, matirsame, waayaa

la' / -le indhoole

-la'aan

**Wuu iscelin kari waayay farxad daraadeed**

## Negative declarative

Magaalada ma tagayo?  
Telefoonka ma ka jawaabi kartid.

### Interrogative

Wax ma akhrinaysaa?  
Taleefanka ma ka jawaabi kartaa?

### negative interrogative

Ma sheegin miyaa?

Wax **ma** akhrinaysid **miyaa**?

### Negative Imperative

Ha sheegin!

Waxaynaan arag tanoo kale, balse **ma** aha mid dhib ina gaarsiinaysa.

Cali ma uusan ogeyn inaan is arkayno.

Cali muusan ogeyn in aan is arkayno.

Meesha kuma yaallaan guryo badan.

Waxay ku heeshiiyeen in **aysan** heshiin karin.

Shaqadan ma ahan mid dhamaatay.

Shaqadan ilayn lama dhamynin.

## 12. Terminology

Speech acts: statement, command, question.

Sentence types: declarative, imperative, interrogative.

Question types: yes-no question, content question, alternative question, tag question.

Basic word order.

Negation.

## 12. Additional reading

Kroeger (2005), Chapter 11, Special sentence types, pages 196–214.

## 12. Old Exercises

- 10.1. How many types of indirect speech acts can you think of in Somali? Give one or two examples of each type of mismatch between sentence type pattern and intended speech act.
- 10.2. What is the basic word order in Somali. Give examples that correspond to the criteria listed by Bickford.
- 10.3. How typical are Somali imperative clauses in a typological perspective? Do Somali imperatives behave like in most other languages or not? Illustrate with examples!
- 10.4. Does Somali have something like an imperative in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person? Give examples.
- 10.5. How can you make command more polite or soft in Somali. Give examples of vrious strategies.
- 10.6. How are typical yes-no questions expressed in Somali? Give a few different examples and try to describe the sentence pattern in syntactic terms (intonation, question particle, verb affix, word order). What can you say about the use of focus particles?
- 10.7. How are typical content questions expresse in Somali? Give a few different examples and try to describe the sentence pattern in syntactic terms. In what position do question words occur? What can you say about the use of focus particles?
- 10.8. How are typical alternative questions expressed in Somali? Give a few different examples and try to describe the sentence pattern in syntactic terms. What can you say about the use of focus particles?
- 10.9. Does Somali have tag questions? If so, how are typical tag questions expressed in Somali? Give a few different examples and try to describe the sentence pattern in syntactic terms.
- 10.10. Does Somali have one or several strategies for turning sentences into negative ones. Give examples of declarative, itterrogative, imperative clauses and how the can be turned into negative clauses.
- 10.11. Give examples of positive clauses that contain different kinds of negative words that do not make the sentence type pattern negative.

# Unit 13

## Relative clauses (< 12)

### 13.1 Relative clauses

A relative clause is a subclause that is part of a noun phrase and modifies the head of that noun phrase.

*Waa<sup>PP</sup> < maxay<sup>NP</sup> < shaqada (*ay Aamina qabanaysaa*)<sup>NP</sup>?*

Just like any other modifier in Somali, the relative clause follows **after** its head noun.

Many languages have one or more **relativisers** (relative words) or relative pronouns that introduce relative clauses. English has *that, which, who, whose...* Swedish has *som, vilken, vars...* Somali does not have a word of this kind. In Somali, relative clauses are added directly to the head noun.

Instead, one of the most important differences between Somali main and subclauses are that main clauses contain a **sentence particle**, whereas subclauses don't.

Another typical trait of Somali relative clauses is that they most often begin with the **short subject pronoun**, cf. *ay* in the example above.

### 13.2 Relativisation strategies

The head noun of a relative clause has a grammatical relation both to the matrix clause and to the relative clauses. These are often differentiated as an **external** grammatical relation to the matrix clause and an **internal** grammatical relation to the relative clauses. The internal grammatical relation to the relative clause is also often referred to as the relativised function of the head noun within the relative clause.

The only way to identify the grammatical function of the head noun in Somali relative clauses is usually to identify the missing argument in the relative clause. The missing argument is usually referred to as the gap in the relative clause. The head noun of the relative clause is semantically interpreted as filling this gap.

Another typical trait of relative clauses is that the **head noun** of the subclause plays **two different roles** at the same time. Semantically, it is part of both the main clause and the relative subclause.

*[Waa]<sub>PaP</sub> [maxay]<sub>NP</sub> [shaqada [*ay Aamina samaynaysaa*]<sub>REL.CL</sub>]<sub>NP</sub>?*

*Shaqada*, in this example, is the subject of the main clause. Compare with

*[Waa]<sub>PaP</sub> [maxay]<sub>NP</sub> [shaqadu]<sub>NP</sub>?*

*[Waa]<sub>PaP</sub> [maxay]<sub>NP</sub> [shaqada Aamina]<sub>NP</sub>?*

At the same time *shaqada* is interpreted as the object of the relative subclause.

*Shaqada bay Aamina samaynaysaa.*

Waa maxay **shaqadu**?

**Shaqadee** bay Aamina samaynaysaa?

Waa maxay **shaqadu Shaqadee** bay Aamina samaynaysaa?

Waa maxay **shaqada** \_\_\_\_\_ ay Aamina samaynaysaa?

What is the job that Amina is doing?

Waa maxay **shaqada ay Aamina samaynaysaa**?

Waa maxay **shaqada Aamina ay samaynaysaa**?

Waa maxay **shaqada Aamina samaynaysaa**?

The only reason that it is interpreted as the object of the relative clause [*ay Aamina samaynaysaa*] is that there is no other word within this relative clause that could be the object of the verb *samaynaysaa*. Since the object is “missing”, this **gap** is filled by the head noun of the relative clause.

A head noun may semantically also function as an adverbial in the subclause, often then the object of a preposition. In that case, the preposition will stand on its own in the subclause and refer back to the head noun that is actually located outside the subclause.

*Hoosta ka xariiq erayada* [uu **ku** jiro xarafka x].  
*Gurigii* [*ay ka* timid] bay ku noqotay.  
*Dareeriya idaha* [uu **la** socdo wanku]!  
*Calaamad ku qor erayada* [uu **ka** khalday imtixaanka].

Another strategy that is less common in Somali only occurs when the relativised function of the head noun is to be a modifier of a noun in the relative clause. This is always expressed through the presence of a possessive suffix after the noun that is modified by the preceding head noun. This way of marking the relativised function of the head noun is often referred to as PRONOMINAL COPY, PRONOUN RESUMPTION or PRONOUN RETENTION.

If the head noun’s function in the relative clause is as a modifier of another noun, this is expressed through the possessive endings in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person: *-kiisa/-tiisa*, *-keeda/-teeda*, *-kooda/-tooda*. The corresponding relative word used in English and Swedish would be *whose* and *vars*, respectively.

*Waa maxay dhererka dhinaca labajibbaarane [wareeggiisu yahay 44 sm]?*

*Iskuulka Raage Ugaas dhismaha [dabaqissa 2aad horey looma arag].*

*Sheeg xeebta [quruxdeeda dadku jecel yihiin?]*

*Waa maxay hogaamiyaha [hadalkiisu wanaagsan yahay]?*

*Waa maxay miisaanka afar nin oo midkiiba [miisankiisu yahay 50 kiilo]?*

*Waa tuma gabadha [dooddeedu wareerisay dadweynaha]?*

## 13.3 Types of head nouns

A major distinction is made between relative clauses following indefinite and definite head nouns. When the subclause is not the first modifier, it is preceded by the conjunction **oo** if the head noun is indefinite, and usually by **ee** if the head noun is definite.

### 13.3.1 Indefinite head noun

When a relative clause follows immediately after an **indefinite common noun**, no conjunction is used.

*Suuq [qadiimi ah] baa dad badani alaab u iib geeyaan.*

*Nin [cirro leh] ayaa ilmo yar garaacay.*

*Waxaa timid diyaaraad [1000 qof qaadda] oo [buluug ah].*

*Boqor fuushan faras [dheereeyaa] oo [midab casuuna leh].*

*Ilmuu waxa uu u baahan yahay in la mudo si looga tallaalo cudurro [halis ah].*

*Booliska, dhakhtarrada iyo barayaashu waxa ay deriska u hayaan shaqo [waxtar leh].*

*Ragga dabdemisku waxa ay adeegsadaan jaranjaro [ay ku gaaraan dadka [ku xannibma gudaha dhismaha dheer ee [gubanaya]]].*

When a relative clause with an **indefinite** head noun is not the first modifier it must be preceded by the conjunction **oo**.

*Dabadeed wiil kale **oo** [Cali la yiraahdo] ayaa hadlay oo yiri...*

*Ma jiraa dad da' weyn **oo** [ku nool deriskiinna]?*

*Maalin ayaa ardayad cusubi **oo** [ka timid xaafad kale] ku soo biirtay dugsiga.*

*Guuleed waxa uu wadaa baabuur dabdemis oo weyn **oo** [midab cas leh].*

*Sheeg laba shay oo [muhiim ah] oo [muslinka iyo kiristaanku ay ku kala duwan yihiin.]*

*Qor laba sababood oo [maangal ah] oo [aad ku taageertay fikirkaaga.]*

*Wasiir kale **oo** [ Xuseen la dhaho] ayaa khudbadeeyey oo [bixiyey warbixin cusub].*

**Moos** macaan oo [sokori la yiraahdo] oo [dabiici ah] ayaa salladda ku jira.

Wadihii baa waday **gaari** [xamuul ah] oo [duqoobay] oo [geerashka ku maaroobay].

### 13.3.2 Definite head noun

After definite head nouns, personal pronouns and proper names, two types of relative clauses are distinguished: restrictive and descriptive.

## 13.4 Restrictive relative clauses

**Restrictive** relative clause define or identify, as uniquely as possible, the person or object that the head noun refers to. The head noun itself would not be enough to do so.

Restrictive relative clauses that follow directly after the head noun are not marked in any particular way.

**Wiilka** [Maryan la hadlayaa] waa walaalkeed.

If a **restrictive** relative clause with a **a defininte head noun** is not the first modifier, then the relative clause is preceded by the conjuntion *ee*.

Geedka moosku waxa uu ka baxaa **dalalka** cimilada kulul *ee* [biyaha badan leh].

Magacow **cuntada** kala duwan *ee* [sawirka ka muuqata].

Maxaa uu ahaa **dharka** cusub *ee* [Xasan loo iibiyay]?

**Wiilka** yar *ee* [Maryan la hadlayaa] waa walaalkeed.

Ammnigu waxay raadinayaan **ninka** dheer *ee* [ka baxsaday].

Ardaydu waa ay jecelyihiiin **maamulaha** debecsan *ee* [kartida badan leh].

Anigu waan ka jeclahay **sawirkan** qurxoон *ee* [suran derbiga].

**Dharka** cusub *ee* [dukaanka yaalla] *ee* [darbiga sudhan]aad buu u qurxoон yahay.

**Dukaamada** waaweyn *ee* [aan waardiye lahayn] *ee* [suuqa ku yaalla] waa la jabsadaa.

**Ninkan** wareersan *ee* [aan shaarka qabini] *ee* [iska ordaya], xaggee ka yimid?

**Gawaadhida** cusub *ee* [korontada ah] *ee* (Yurub ka shaqaysa) ma gaadhin weli Soomaaliya.

**Ninkii** dheer *ee* [Soomaaliga ah] *ee* [tartamaya] waa khabiir.

**Ninka** indhaha cad *ee* [baraha ah] *ee* [xisaab dhiga] waa waayo arag.

Shiinaha ayaa dhisay **waddada** dheer *ee* [isku xidha Burco iyo Xamar].

Libaaxu wuxu ugaadhsadaa **xayawaannada** kala duwan *ee* [ku nool kaymaha afrika].

Beerta weyn ee [Jannaale ku taal] way bislaatay.

The same is also true in adverbial relative clauses following a subordinator word that is a noun, such as *markii*.

Markii [uu kubbaddii gaarey] ee [uu gacanta ku dhigay] ayaa baabuur aad u ordaya meel dhow kaga soo baxay.

QUESTION Fungerar även *oo*? Finns någon skillnad? Regional?

Markii [uu kubbaddii gaarey] **oo** [uu gacanta ku dhigay] ayaa baabuur aad u ordaya meel dhow kaga soo baxay.

## 13.5 Descriptive relative clauses

Descriptive relative clauses mainly follow after indefinite head nouns, but they sometimes also occur after definite headnouns.

A **descriptive** relative clause refers to a definite head noun that is already uniquely identifiable, also without the relative clause. The relative clause simply gives additional, less crucial information about the head noun. Descriptive relative clauses are practically always preceded by the conjunction *oo*.

Faadumo waxa ay qortay qoraalkan gaaban ee [ku saabsan saaxiibaddeeda cusub].

Faadumo waxa ay qortay qoraalkan gaaban **oo** [ku saabsan saaxiibaddeeda cusub].

= *kaas oo ...*

Eller är detta regional variation?

Gabadha qurxoon *oo* [marwada ah] waa fariidad.

Baabuurka yar *oo* [midabka cas leh] waa qaali.

Marada cad *oo* [maraykaanka ah] waa boqol shilin.

Obligatorily *oo* after proper names:

Waxa aan arkay Axmed *oo* [dhar qurux badan qaba] *oo* [la sheekaysanaya Aamina.]

*Cabdi* *oo* ....

Cabdigi dheeraa *ee* ...

## 13.5 Background clauses

Proper noun (names) and personal pronouns can only be followed by descriptive relative clauses, never by restrictive ones. That is because Proper noun (names) and personal pronouns already identify a person, place etc. in a unique way. The subclause can only offer additional descriptive information, never information that is crucial for the identification.

In Somali such words, especially personal pronouns and proper names, but sometimes also common nouns, are very frequent in a specific kind of construction, where the head noun and the relative clause only occur as a loosely associated addition to the main clause. The head noun of the subclause does not necessarily play any specifically important role in the main clause.

This kind of relative clause can occur both before and after the main clause, and it describes some circumstances that form the background for the event in the main clause.

### Personal pronouns

Aniga oo [ku daalay casharkaygii] ayaa wakhtigii dhammaaday.

Iyada oo [faraxsan] ayaa imtixaankii ka soo baxday.

Iyaga oo [bannooni ciyaaraya] ayaan soo arkay.

Balse annaga oo [jaamacadda ku sii socona] ayaan bishii aragnay.

Xilli habeen ah aniga oo [suumqa jooga] ayaan arkay saaxiibtay.

Saqda dhexe isaga oo [hurdaya] ayuu riyooday.

Hase yeeshee maalin iyaga oo [garoonka ku sii socda] ayey maqleen onkod roob.

### Names

Xasan oo [madaxa ruxaya] ayaa yiri "Maya."

Carruurta oo [fadhfadhida] ayaa tumanaysa sacabka.

Caasha oo [dhaqaysa dharka] ayaa telefonoon ku hadlaysa.

Xasan oo [ordaya] ayaa yiri "kaalay aan ciyaarnee".

Cali oo [timaha salaaxaya] ayaa yidhi "Ax."

Maxamed oo [indhaha xoqanaya] ayaa ooyay

Maxamuud oo [jirka maydhaya] baa yiri "albaabka ii xira."

Cali oo [gacanta taagaya] baa waydiistay "caawimo."

Caasha oo [soor sameysay] baa soo gashay.

Cali oo [arday ah] baan la kulmay.

*Cal* oo [magaalada maraya] ayaa galay shil.

*Guuleed* oo [lugaynaya] ayaan la kulmay.

*Bisadda Faarax* oo [eryanaysa jiir] ayaa koob jiidhay.

*Xasan-Dheere* oo [xariif ah] oo dhigta dugsiga sare ayaa hadlay.

*Xamar-Cadde* oo [caasimadda Soomaaliya ah] waa magaalo weyn.

### Common nouns

*Macallimadda* oo [cadhaysan] ayaa ii soo dacwootay.

*Dukaanka* oo [camiran] ayaynu ka soo adeeganaynaa.

Jämför mer vardagligt

Tii Caasha ee dharka dhaqaysay ayaa telefoonkii ku hadlaysa.

Tii Caasha ahayd ee...

## 13.6 Demonstrative pronouns as head words

QUESTION What about modifiers after a demonstrative pronoun as head word.

Jämför: Vilken skillnade finns?

*Kuwii* [ciyaarayey] ee [guulaystay] ayaa ka soo baxay garoonka.

*Kuwii* [ciyaarayey] oo [guulaystay] ayaa ka soo baxay garoonka.

## 13.6 Grammaticalised ‘relative’ pronouns

The same kind of construction as the above mentioned circumstantial construction can also have the distal demonstrative pronouns (*kaas*, *taas*, *kuwaas*) as the head word. The pronouns are often written together with the conjunction (*kaasoo*, *taasoo*, *kuwaasoo* or *kaas oo*, *taas oo*, *kuwaas oo*; 42% contracted forms vs. 58% separately written forms in HaBiT).

These contracted words behave almost like relative pronouns, but an important restriction still remains: this type of relative clause usually occurs only after the whole main clause, which shows that the relative clause is not fully integrated with the main clause.

*Tuulo kastaa waxa ay doorataa guddoomiye iyo xoghaye, kuwaas oo ilaaliya danaha tuulada.*

*Kulan aqooneedku wuxuu ka kooban yahay ugu yaraan seddex qof kuwaas oo kulmaya ugu yaraan seddex jeer.* (Student translation of: En studiecirkel består av minst tre personer som träffas minst tre gånger.)

*Arday kasta waxay leeyihii maktabad [taas oo buugaagi taal]*

*Wadan kasta waxaa uu doortaa **madax**, [kuwaas oo dhowra sharciga]  
Iswiidhan waxay leedahay **Boqor** [kaas oo qaabila martida].*

## 13.7 The Form of the Verb in Relative Clauses

If there is a subject word in the relative clause, i.e. the head word of the relative clause is not its subject, then the verb in the relative clause will be in the present subjunctive or in the past indicative.

*Soo ogaada halka [uu ka helo waxyaabaha [uu dukaanka ku **iibiyo**]].*

*Derisyada intooda badani waxa ay leeyihiin laba ama saddex makhaayadood oo [ay dadku ka **shaahaan**].*

*Uga warrama ardayda fasalkiinna waxa [**aad** soo **aragteen**].*

If there is no subject word in the relative clauses, i.e. the head word of the relative clauses also functions as the subject of the relative clauses, the the verb in the relative clause will be in one of the reduce indicative form.

*Soo ogaada inta qof ee kale ee [ka **shaqaysa** dukaanka].*

*Marka hore dhakhtarka ayaa qora nooca dawada [wax u **taraysa** bukaanka].*

*Ka dib qofka [**buka**] ayaa dawada ka soo iibsada farmasiga.*

If the subclause is negated with *aan*, the verb will always be in the reduced subjunctive form (simple *-n*, *-in*, *-nin*, or progressive *-ayn*, *-aymin*).

*Dadku waxa ay u baahan yihii in ay iibsadaan walxaha [**aanay** samayn **karin** ama beeran **karin**].*

If the head word of the subclause is the subject of the matrix clause, the last word in the subclause should take one of the subject endings *-aa*, *-i* or *-u*.

Verb forms ending in *-o* or *-a* change into *-aa*. Sentences with a relative clause whose head word is the subject of the matrix clause. The verb in the subclause should bear the subject ending *-aa*.

*Waa maxay **shaqada** [ay Aamina samaynaysaa]?*

*Saddexdan qof ee [**aad arkaysaa**] waa Saxarla walaalaheed. (Saxarla)*

*Waa midabkee **shaatiga** [Caasha ay dhaqaysaa]?*

*Waa midabkee **shaatigu**?*

*Waa kuma **qofka** [albaabka soo garaacayaa]?*

*Waa maxay **waxabarashada** [**aad** dhiganaysaa]?*

*Waa maxay **maadooyinka** [bare Morgan dhigaa]?*

*Waa xaggee **meesha** [dhulbaruhu maraa]?*

*Waa maxay **shaqada** [uu Madaxweyne qabtaa]?*

In negative subclauses, verb forms ending in *-n* add the subject ending *-i*. When the head word of a relative clause is the subject of the matrix clause, certain verb forms in the subclause takes the subject ending *-i*.

*Qaybta [aan la beddeli karini]* waa xuquuqda qofka Soomaaliga ah dastuurku siiyey.

*Anigu [waxaanan samayn karini]* waa inaan diyaarad raaco.

*Gabadhan [aan khimaarka qabini]* waa macallimad.

*Xalka [aan la heli gaari karini]* waa helida dhibaatada dhacday.

*Dhinaca [aan la mari karini]* waa jidka soddonka.

The subject ending *-i* is also added to *ah* and *leh*.

*Libaaxa [labka ahi]* waxa uu leeyahay dhogor badan.

*Awrka [baarqabka ahi]* wuxu leeyahay doob.

*Wiilka [geesiga ahi]* waa Ciise

In some dialects, the suffix *-i* also occurs after the reduced present tense forms.

*Wiilasha [halkaa joogaayi/joogaahi]* waa kooxdii fanka.

As usual, definite noun forms ending in *-a* change into *-u*.

*Xaggee ayaa ay ka timid tamarta [gubaysa warqaddu]?*

*Xaggee ayaa ay ka timid tamarta [warqadda gubaysaa]?*

*Xaggee buu ka yimid daadka [qaaday magaaladu]?*

*Xaggee buu ka yimid daadka [magaalada qaaday]?*

*Waa tuma gabadha [dooddeedu dadweynaha wareerisay]?*

bäst

*?Waa tuma gabadha [dooddeedu wareerisay dadweynuhu]?*

lite konstig

*Waa tuma gabadha [dooddeedu wareerisay dadweynaha]?*

ok

## 13.8 Word order in relative clauses

Relativa Bisatser oftast börjar med en kort subjektspronomen om de innehåller subjekt.

*Waa maxay shaqada [uu Madaxweyne qabtaa]?* statistiskt vanligast

*Waa maxay shaqada [Madaxweyne uu qabtaa]?*

*Waa maxay shaqada [Madaxweyne qabtaa]?*

*Waa maxay shaqada [uu Madaxweyne qabto]?* ingen subjektsändelse

## 13. Terminology

restrictive versus descriptive relative clauses

## 13. Additional reading

Kroeger (2005), Chapter 12.4–12.6, pages 227–241.

Antinucci, F. & A. Puglielli. 1980. The syntax of indicator particles in Somali: relative clause construction. *Afroasiatic Linguistics* 7(3), 85–102.

<http://hdl.handle.net/2307/856>

Frascarelli, M. & A. Puglielli. 2005. A comparative analysis of restrictive and appositive relative clauses in Cushitic languages. In Brugè, Giusti, Munaro, Schweikert & Turano (eds.), *Contributions to the 30th Incontro di Grammatica Generativa* (Venice, February 26–28, 2004), 307–332. Venezia: Cafoscarina.

<http://hdl.handle.net/2307/2595>

Gebert, Lucyna. 1984. Absolute constructions in Somali.

## 13. Old Exercises

12.1 Find five sentences – not too long ones – that contain a realtive clause. Mark the relative clause with square brackets. Underline the head word of the relative clause. Mark the matrix clause and the relative clause verb with boldface. What is the head words **external and internal grammatical relation** (its role in the matrix clause and in the relative clause, respectively)? E.g.

Xasan oo [madaxa ruxaya] ayaa yiri “Maya.”  
internal: subject, external: subject

12.2 Write three sentences with a relative clause that contains a preposition that refers to the head noun of the realtive clause. E.g.

*Hoosta ka xariiq erayada [uu ku jiro xarafka x]!*

12.3 Write three sentences with a relative clause that contains a “pronominal copy” of the head noun, i.e. a possessive ending referring back to the head noun. E.g.

*Waa maxay dhererka dhinaca labajibbaarane [wareeggiisu yahay 44 sm]?*

12.4 Write three sentences with a **restrictive** relative clause which is the **first modifier** of the head noun. Underline the head noun and mark the restrictive relative clause with square brackets.

12.5 Write three sentences with a **restrictive** relative clause which is the **second modifier** of the head noun. Underline the head noun and mark the restrictive relative clause with square brackets.

12.6 Write three sentences with a **descriptive** relative clause which is the **first modifier** of an **indefinite** head noun. Underline the head noun and mark the descriptive relative clause with square brackets.

12.7 Write three sentences with a **descriptive** relative clause which is the **second modifier** of an **indefinite** head noun. Underline the head noun and mark the descriptive relative clause with square brackets.

12.8 Write three sentences with a **descriptive** relative clause which is the **modifier** of a **definite** head noun. Underline the head noun and mark the descriptive relative clause with square brackets.

12.9 Write three sentences with a **descriptive** relative clause which is the **modifier** of a **proper** noun (name). Underline the head noun and mark the descriptive relative clause with square brackets.

12.10 Write three sentences with a **descriptive** relative clause which is the **modifier** of a **personal pronoun**. Underline the head noun and mark the descriptive relative clause with square brackets.

12.11 Write three sentences with a **descriptive** relative clause which is the **modifier** of a **demonstrative pronoun**. Underline the head noun and mark the descriptive relative clause with square brackets.

12.12 Write three sentences with a relative clause whose head word is the subject of the matrix clause. The verb in the subclause should bear the subject ending *-aa*. Underline the head noun and mark the relative clause with square brackets.

12.13 Write three sentences with a relative clause whose head word is the subject of the matrix clause. The verb in the subclause should bear the subject ending *-i*. Underline the head noun and mark the relative clause with square brackets.

12.14 Write three sentences with a relative clause whose head word is the subject of the matrix clause. The last word of the subclause should be a noun ending in *-u*. Underline the head noun and mark the relative clause with square brackets.

# References

- Dayley, Jon P. 1989. *Tümpisa (Panamint) Shoshone Grammar*. University of California Press.
- Johansson, Mats & Satu Manninen. 2012. *English linguistics: introduction to morphology, syntax and semantics*. Lund: Studentlitteratur.  
Available as printed book through our university library: UB GU 400 12/111
- Kroeger. 2005. *Analyzing grammar*.  
Available as e-book through our university library.
- Puglielli, Gebert & Antinucci. 1981. *Sintassi della lingua somala*.  
Downloadable from <https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/802>  
Just for reference if someone likes to read in Italian.
- Raabbi. 2014. *Buugga Weedhaynta*.  
Can only be purchased in Hargeysa.
- Saeed. 1999. *Somali*.  
Only available as printed book.
- Waasuge. 1990. *Weeraynta Soomaaliga*.  
Downloadable from <https://arcadia.sba.uniroma3.it/handle/2307/2513>  
Edited version downloadable from <http://morgannilsson.se/Waasuge1990Weeraynta.pdf>
- Zholkovskij. 1979. *Somali syntax*.  
Available as pdf file in Canvas: <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/57164/files/6253147?wrap=1>

## More will follow...

This pdf will be updated on a weekly basis and a new unit will be added each week until the end of May 2025.

If you want to have a look at the later units, there is an older version of this pdf from 2022 that you can find here:

<https://morgannilsson.se/WeerayntaAfkaSoomaaliga.2022.pdf>

# Unit 14

## Coordination & Subordination (< 11)

### 14.1 – Relations between clauses

There are three different ways that clauses can be put together in order to create a text.

1. Independent clauses follow each other as separate sentences.

one clause = one sentence

*Gidaarrada gurigan waxa lagu dhisay dhagax iyo shamiinto. Saqafka waxa laga sameeyey terniig. Albaabka waxa laga sameeyay loox. Daaqadaha waxa ku jira muraayado. (Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 1aad, Nayroobi 2001)*

2. Independent clauses are connected to each other by a conjunction. They are still two main clauses with equal status, but there is a relation between them that is expressed by the conjunction. This strategy is referred to as COORDINATION.

two main clauses = one sentence

*Ibraahim waxa uu qabtaa dadka xun waxa uuna hor geeyaa maxkamad. (Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 3aad, Nayroobi 2001)*

3. One clause occurs inside another clause. We then talk about a main or matrix clause and a subordinate or embedded clause. This strategy is referred to as SUBORDINATION.

a main clause + a subclause = one sentence

*Ragga dab-demisku waxa ay isticmaalaan biyo [ay dabka ku demiyaan]. (Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 3aad, Nayroobi 2001)*

The main difference between a main clause and a subordinate clause is that a main clause contains a sentence particle, while subclauses don't. The only exception are imperative main clauses which don't contain any sentence particle.

### 14.2 – Coordination

The ADDITIVE conjunctions *oo* and *-na* joins two clauses. *oo* may also join incomplete clauses (verb phrases).

Alternatives or options are joined by the so called DISJUNCTIVE conjunction *ama*. The variant *mise* is used in questions.

An contrast or contradiction is expressed by the ADVERSATIVE conjunctions *laakiin* and *-se*, or by the phrases *hase yeeshie*, *hase ahaatee*. After a negated or prohibitive clause, *ee* or *balse* are used.

*Waxa aad u shaqeyn doontaan koox-koox, hase yeeshie waxa looga baahan yahay arday waliba in uu diyaarsado khariidaddiisa, maxaa yeelay waxa laga yaabaa in aad ugu baahataan qorshe safar. (Cilmiga Bulshada, Nayroobi 2001)*

*Ha ooyin ee bal ii sheeg waxa dhacay!*

Reason is expressed by the EXPLANATIVE conjunction *waayo*, or the phrases *maxaa yeelay* or *sababta oo ah*.

*Ha tegin hadda, waayo waa madow!*

*Xirisi ma ciyaari karo kubbad sababtoo ah lug ayaa si xun uga jabtay.*

The CONCLUSIVE conjunction *ee* expresses a purpose after an imperative clause. It often follows after the second clause, contracted with the final word.

*Kaalaya, aan ku dheelnee!*

### 14.3 – Subordination

In certain types of clauses the subject pronoun is optional. This is the case in:

- oblique subordinate clauses with a subject NP

*Example*

However, a short subject pronoun usually occurs as the first word in subclauses that contain a subject NP. It is as if a short subject pronoun that occurs on its own, without being immediately preceded by a sentence particle, serves to indicate a subclause.

*Example*

There are two basic types of embedded or subordinate clauses.

1. Clauses that **function like a noun**. These subclauses can often be replaced by a simple noun. These subclauses function as a complement or adjunct to the verb of the main clause. These clauses are called NOMINAL SUBCLUSES. They are introduced by a **complementizer word**, which is most often the subordinating conjunction (subjunction) *in*.

*Dadkani ma rabaan [in ay kaneecadu ku taranto cawska dhaadheer]. (Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 3aad, Nayroobi 2001)*

*Dadkani ma rabaan dagaal.*

2. Clauses that **function like an adjective**. These subclauses can often be replaced by a simple adjective. They are added as a modifier phrase to a noun in the main clause. These clauses are called RELATIVE SUBCLAUSES (or ATTRIBUTIVE SUBCLAUSES).

*Ragga dab-demisku waxa ay isticmaalaan biyo [ay dabka ku demiyaan]. (Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 3aad, Nayroobi 2001)*

*Ragga dab-demisku waxa ay isticmaalaan biyo badan.*

#### 14.4 – Nominal subclauses

Sababta ay u dhimmatay waa in ay sun cabtay.

Sababta aynu u dib dhacnay, waa in ay waddadii **xirnayd**

Nominal subclauses have a direct relation to the predicate verb in the main clause. The subclause functions as the object, the subject or an adjunct (adverbial) phrase with respect to the main clause verb.

Most Somali nominal subclauses are introduced by the conjunction *in*.

Subject subclause

*Ma ficiina [in carruurta laga nixiyo].*

*[Maanta in aynu kubbadda cagta ciyaarno] aad bay u fican tahay.*

Object subclause

*Hubso [in ay darsiga garteen] iyo in kale!*

A direct quotation (direct speech) as the object NP of the main clause verb.

*Sahra waxa ay tiri ["Anigu ma rabo."]*

An indirect quotation (indirect speech) as the object subclause of the main clause verb.

*Sahra waxa ay tiri [in aanay rabin.]*

Adverbial (adjunct) subclauses, expressing circumstance such as time, manner etc.

*Waxa la isku raacay in lagu kulmo beerta weyn [mar uusan mr Jones meesha joogin].*

## 14.5 – Characteristics of subclauses

Subordinate clauses can be characterised in a number of important ways that differ more or less categorically from main clauses. There are of course differences between languages, but there are also notable similarities. Typical for Somali subclauses is that:

- there is never any sentence particle in a subordinate clause,
- the subclause negation is always *aan*, never *ma*, whereas both occur in main clauses.
- the most common word order in subclauses is SOV.
- the subject pronoun is commonly used immediately after the complementizer (or subordinator word), but it may also occur in other positions. It is optional if the subject is also expressed by a noun.
- the predicate verb in a subordinate clause is almost never in the full present or future indicative form. It can however be in most other indicative, subjunctive or conditional forms, depending on the type of subclause. In some types of subclauses it is not possible to use the progressive forms.

### 14.5.1 – Internally headed subclauses

Waxay la ahayd dhibaatooyinkii ifka lagu uumay idil ahaantood in ay iyada dul saaran yihiin.

What is it **so much** that you love about it?

## 14.6 – Classes of verbs and their preferred complement clauses

There are certain semantic classes of verbs that regularly take object or subject complement clauses:

- **saying and knowing:** *yiraahdaa, gartaa, og yahay, ...* (know, think, say, report, suspect, fear, hope, imply, tell...)
- **manipulation:** (force, persuade, cause, request, urge, command, order...)
- **modality:** *rabaa, doonayaa* (want, intend, plan, try, prefer, threaten, be willing, be afraid, be eager, be able, know how...)
- **aspect:** (begin, finish, keep on, go around...)
- **demands:** *waa muhiim in...* (insist, demand, be essential (that), be important (that)...)

## 14.7 – Direct and indirect quotations

Direct quotations (direct speech) are not subordinate clauses, they are just a word by word citation that is embedded as the object or subject NP in a matrix clause. Direct quotations are fully fledged main clauses with all the typical elements of main clauses, such as a sentence particle and the use of the negation *ma*.

When direct quotations are turned into **indirect** quotations, all deictic words need to be adjusted, e.g. pronouns and words expressing place and time.

Embedded and subordinated statement

Statement:	Sahro: <i>Waxa aan...</i>
Direct quotation:	Axmed: <i>Waxa ay tiri "Waxa aan..."</i>
Indirect quotation:	Axmed: <i>Waxa ay tiri in...</i>

Embedded and subordinated yes-no question

Yes-no question:	<i>Ma...?</i>
Direct quotation:	<i>weydiisay "Ma...?"</i>
Indirect quotation:	<i>weydiisay in..., haddii...</i>

Embedded and subordinated content question

Content question:	<i>Qofkee...?, Maxaa...?, Sidee...?</i>
Direct quotation:	<i>weydiisay "Qofkee...?, Maxaa...?, Sidee...?"</i>
Indirect quotation:	<i>weydiisay qofka..., waxa..., sida...</i>

Embedded and subordinated command

Command:	<i>Xir indhahaaga!</i>
Direct quotation:	<i>Waxay u sheegtay "Xir indhihiisa!"</i>
Indirect quotation:	<i>Waxay u sheegtay in uu xiro indhihiisa.</i>

## 14.8 – Adjunct or adverbial clauses

Most Somali adjunct or adverbial clauses are introduced by a noun that has become more or less grammaticalised in the role of a complementizer. There are also a few Arabic subordinating conjunctions (subjunctions) that are used in this function: *ilaa*, *maadaama*.

Common adjunct clauses express:

- time

*Diinkii waxa uu iska sii watay socodkiisii gaabnaa **ilaa** [uu gaaro meeshii dhammaadka].  
Inta [aynaan shaqada bilaabin] aan nasanno!  
Ilaa [aan ka imanayo] halkan joog!*

- place
- manner
- reason
- goal or purpose
- condition
- comparison

## 14. Terminology

Coordination, subordination.

Main clause or matrix clause.

Subordinate clause (subclause) or dependent clause or embedded clause.

Subclauses that function like NP's (noun-like subclauses),

Subclauses that function like modifiers to NP's (adjective-like subclauses).

## 14. Additional reading

Kroeger. 2005. Chapter 12–12.3.2, pages 218–227.

Gebert, Lucyna. 1992. System of coordination in Somali. In Adam & Geshekter (eds.), *Proceedings of the First International Congress of Somali Studies*, 428–441. Atlanta, Georgia: Scholars Press. (in Canvas)